VX5 Reference Guide

IMPORTANT NOTICE - The LXE VX5 computers and accessories are obsolete. This electronic manual has been made available as a courtesy to LXE's VX5 customers. Please contact your LXE customer support representative for replacement and assistance.





Copyright © December 2007 by LXE Inc. All Rights Reserved E-EQ-VX5RG-G-ARC

Notices

Notice:

LXE Inc. reserves the right to make improvements or changes in the products described in this manual at any time without notice. While reasonable efforts have been made in the preparation of this document to assure its accuracy, LXE assumes no liability resulting from any errors or omissions in this document, or from the use of the information contained herein. Further, LXE Incorporated, reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes to it from time to time without any obligation to notify any person or organization of such revision or changes.

Copyright Notice:

This manual is copyrighted. All rights are reserved. This document may not, in whole or in part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated or reduced to any electronic medium or machine-readable form without prior consent, in writing, from LXE Inc.

Copyright © 2007 by LXE Inc. An EMS Technologies Company. 125 Technology Parkway, Norcross, GA 30092 U.S.A. (770) 447-4224

Trademarks:

LXE® is a registered trademark of LXE Inc. **RFTerm**® is a registered trademark of EMS Technologies, Norcross, GA.

Microsoft, Windows and the Windows logo are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

RAM[®] and RAM Mount[™] are both trademarks of National Products Inc., 1205 S. Orr Street, Seattle, WA 98108.

My-T-Soft® is a registered trademark of Innovation Management Group, Inc.

BC-WEDGETM is a trademark of TAL Technologies (TALtech).

Intel® and Pentium® are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Summit Data Communications, Inc. Summit Data Communications, the Summit logo, and "The Pinnacle of Performance" are trademarks of Summit Data Communications, Inc.

The **Cisco** Square Bridge logo is a trademark of Cisco Systems, Inc.; Aironet, Cisco and Cisco Systems are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

Symbol, the Symbol logo and Spectrum24 are registered trademarks of Symbol Technologies, Inc.

The **Bluetooth**® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by LXE, Inc. is under license.

Wavelink[®], the Wavelink logo and tagline, Wavelink Studio[™], Avalanche Management Console[™], Mobile Manager[™], and Mobile Manager Enterprise[™] are trademarks of Wavelink Corporation, Kirkland, WA.

All other brand or product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies or organizations.

When this manual is in PDF format: "Acrobat® Reader® Copyright © 2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe®, the Adobe logo, Acrobat®, and the Acrobat logo are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated." applies.

Archive December 2008

Revision Notice

VX5 Reference Guide Upgrade From Revision F to Revision G

Section	Explanation
Chapter 1 – Introduction	Added footnote to "Overview" section.
Chapter 3 – System Configuration	Revised "Drive C Directory Structure". Revised "Wavelink Avalanche Enabler Configuration" for Avalanche Mobility Center.
Appendix B – Technical Specifications	Revised "Physical Specifications".

Note: A complete revision history is included in Appendix B, "Technical Specifications".

Table of Contents

Overview	
When to Use this Guide	
Document Conventions	
Quick Start	
Components	
Data Entry	
Keyboard Data Entry	
Barcode Data Entry	
RS-232 Data Entry	
Touchscreen Entry	
Virtual Keyboard	
Getting Help	
Manuals and Accessories	
Manuals	
Ivianuai5	
Accessories	
Accessories	
Accessories	
Accessories IAPTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration	
Accessories APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware Central Processing Unit	
Accessories IAPTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware Central Processing Unit AT Compatible Core Logic	
Accessories	
Accessories APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware. Central Processing Unit. AT Compatible Core Logic System Memory. Upper Memory Block.	
Accessories ACCESSORIES APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware. Central Processing Unit AT Compatible Core Logic. System Memory. Upper Memory Block. Flash BIOS.	
Accessories APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware. Central Processing Unit. AT Compatible Core Logic System Memory. Upper Memory Block. Flash BIOS. Video Subsystem	
Accessories ACCESSORIES APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware. Central Processing Unit. AT Compatible Core Logic System Memory. Upper Memory Block. Flash BIOS. Video Subsystem Power Input.	
Accessories APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware. Central Processing Unit. AT Compatible Core Logic System Memory. Upper Memory Block. Flash BIOS. Video Subsystem Power Input. Uninterruptible Power Supply.	
Accessories	
Accessories	
Accessories APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware. Central Processing Unit. AT Compatible Core Logic System Memory. Upper Memory Block. Flash BIOS. Video Subsystem Power Input. Uninterruptible Power Supply. Backup Battery. PCMCIA Slots. Power Management.	
Accessories APTER 2 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AND LAYOUT Hardware Configuration System Hardware. Central Processing Unit. AT Compatible Core Logic. System Memory. Upper Memory Block. Flash BIOS. Video Subsystem. Power Input. Uninterruptible Power Supply. Backup Battery. PCMCIA Slots. Power Management. Physical Controls.	
Accessories	

Pinout20Printer/PC Serial Connector (COM2)21Technical Specifications - Screen Blanking Cable22Keyboard/Mouse Connector23Pinout23PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24D9 Male Connector24PS/2 Keyboard Connector24PS/2 Keyboard Connector25Pinout25PS/2 Keyboard Connector26Pinout25PS/2 Mouse25Pinout26Pinout26Pinout27PIS/2 Mouse27PIS/2 Mouse27PIS Connector26Pinout27D15 Female Connector27Pinout28RI45 Connector28Pinout29Pinout29Pinout29Pinout30Pinout30Pinout30Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Pinout32Pinout33Output32Pinout33Output33Output33Output33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout35Pinout35Pinou	Scanner Serial Connector (COM1)	
Printer/PC Serial Connector (COM2)21Pinout21Pinout21Technical Specifications – Screen Blanking Cable22Keyboard/Mouse Connector23Pinout23PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24D9 Male Connector24PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24PS/2 Keyboard Connector25Pinout25Pinout25PS/2 Mouse25Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout27D15 Female Connector27D15 Female Connector27Pinout28Pinout28Pinout29Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input33Pinout32UPS Battery Pack Connectors33Sil Input33Output33Output33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout35The Keyboards36The Stery QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout21Technical Specifications – Screen Blanking Cable22Keyboard/Mouse Connector23Pinout23PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24D9 Male Connector24Pinout24PS/2 Keyboard Connector24Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout26Ethernet/USB Connector26Ethernet/USB Connector27D15 Female Connector27USB Connector28Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Audio Connector29Pinout29Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout32Output32Output32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout33Output32Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pi	Printer/PC Serial Connector (COM2)	
Technical Specifications - Screen Blanking Cable22Keyboard/Mouse Connector23Pinout23PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24D9 Male Connector24Pinout24Pinout24Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Ethernet/USB Connector26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27D15 Female Connector27VisB Connector27VisB Connector27VisB Connector28Pinout28Pinout28Pinout29Pinout29Pinout30Pinout30Pinout30Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Pinout33Output32Pinout33Anterna Connector33Anterna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount35The Keyboards37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Keyboard/Mouse Connector23Pinout23Pinout24PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24D9 Male Connector24PS/2 Keyboard Connector25Pinout25Pinout25PS/2 Mouse25PS/2 Mouse26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout27Pis Female Connector27Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Pinout29Pinout29Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout30Power Supply Connectors32Input32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout33Output33Output33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vericle Remote Antenna Mount34Vericle Remote Antenna Mount35The Keyboards37Key Maps37NumLock and the VXS37	Technical Specifications – Screen Blanking Cable	
Pinout23PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24D9 Male Connector24Pinout24PS/2 Keyboard Connector25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout26Ethernet/USB Connector26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27Pinout28Pinout29VBS Connector29VBS Connector29Pinout29Vadio Connector29Pinout30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Output32Pinout33Pinout	Keyboard/Mouse Connector	
PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable24D9 Male Connector24Pinout24Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Ethernet/USB Connector26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27Pinout28Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Pinout29Pinout29Audio Connector30Power Supply Connector31Pinout30Power Supply Connectors32Input32Pinout32Pinout33Output32Pinout33Output33Sattery Pack Connectors33Input33Pinout35Pinout35 <td>Pinout</td> <td></td>	Pinout	
D9 Male Connector24Pinout25Pinout25Pinout25Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Connector26Pinout27D15 Female Connector27USB Connector27USB Connector28Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Visto Connector29Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout33Numut33Pinout33Stattery Pack Connectors33Stattery Pack Connectors33Stattery Pack Connectors33Stattery Pack Connectors33Stattery Pack Connectors33Stattery Extension Cable Connectors33Stattery Extension Cable Connector Pin34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards37Key Maps37NumLock and the VXS37	PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable	
Pinout24PS/2 Keyboard Connector25Pinout25Ps/2 Mouse25Pinout26Pinout26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Connector26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27USB Connector28Pinout28RJ45 Connector28Pinout29Pinout29Pinout30Power Supply Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connectors32Input32Pinout32VPS Battery Pack Connectors32Qutput33Pinout33Stattery Extension Cable Connectors33Sinout33Pinout34Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Sperad Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin35	D9 Male Connector	
PS/2 Keyboard Connector25Pinout25PS/2 Mouse25Pinout25Ethernet/USB Connector26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27VIS Connector28Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Audio Connector29Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Pinout33Output33Output33South33Output33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount35The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout25PS/2 Mouse25Pinout25Ethernet/USB Connector26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27D15 Female Connector27VISB Connector28Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Pinout29Pinout30Power Supply Connector30Power Supply Connector31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Output32Pinout32Output32Pinout33Andenector33Output33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pino	PS/2 Keyboard Connector	
PS/2 Mouse25Pinout25Pinout26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Pinout29Pinout29Audio Connector30Power Supply Connector31Pinout30Power Supply Connectors32Input32Pinout32VISB Battery Pack Connectors32Pinout32Output32Pinout33Antenna Connector33Antenna Connector34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout36Pinout37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout25Ethernet/USB Connector26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout29Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout32Input32Pinout32USB Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout33Output32Pinout33Output33Output33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout34Vehicle Remote Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout36Pinout37Pinout36Pinout37Pinout36Pinout37Pinout36Pinout37Pinout36Pinout37Pinout36Pinout37Pinout36<	PS/2 Mouse	
Ethernet/USB Connector26Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27USB Connector28Pinout28RJ45 Connector29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31UNPS Battery Pack Connectors32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout32Pinout33Qutput33Pinout33Qutput33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35 <t< td=""><td>Pinout</td><td></td></t<>	Pinout	
Pinout26Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout28RJ45 Connector29Pinout29Audio Connector30Power Supply Connector31Pinout30Power Supply Connectors32Input31USB Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout33Qutput33Pinout33Antenna Connector33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35The Keyboards37NumLock and the VX537	Ethernet/USB Connector	
Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable27D15 Female Connector27Pinout27VISB Connector28Pinout28RJ45 Connector29Pinout29Audio Connector30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Ups Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Output33Output33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
D15 Female Connector27Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout28R145 Connector29Audio Connector29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout30Power Supply Connectors32Input32Output32Pinout32Output32Pinout32Output32Pinout33Output33Output33Output33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35The Keyboards37NumLock and the VX537	Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable	
Pinout27USB Connector28Pinout28RJ45 Connector29Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout30Power Supply Connectors32Input32Output32Pinout32Output32Pinout32Output32Pinout32Output32Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	D15 Female Connector	
USB Connector28Pinout28RJ45 Connector29Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout28RJ45 Connector29Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Output33Output35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37NumLock and the VX537	USB Connector	
RJ45 Connector29Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Pinout33Output33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount35The Keyboards35The Keyboards37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout29Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Output33Pinout33Nuntum33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37NumLock and the VX537	RJ45 Connector	
Audio Connector30Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Output33Output33Pinout33Neutout33Output33Pinout33Output33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Output34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout30Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Nut33Pinout33Pinout33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Audio Connector	
Power Supply Connector31Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Pinout33Nuntum33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout31UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount35Pinout35Pinout35Pinout35NumLock and the VX537	Power Supply Connector	
UPS Battery Pack Connectors32Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Input32Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	UPS Battery Pack Connectors	
Pinout32Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Input	
Output32Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout32UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors33Input33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Output	
UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors.33Input33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Input33Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors	
Pinout33Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Input	
Output33Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Pinout33Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Output	
Antenna Connector34Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Pinout	
Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin.34Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount.34Internal USB Port.35Pinout.35The Keyboards.36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device.37Key Maps.37NumLock and the VX5.37	Antenna Connector	
Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount.34Internal USB Port35Pinout35The Keyboards36The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device37Key Maps37NumLock and the VX537	Spread Spectrum RF Antenna Connector Pin	
Internal USB Port	Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount	
Pinout	Internal USB Port	
The Keyboards 36 The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device 37 Key Maps 37 NumLock and the VX5 37	Pinout	
The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device 37 Key Maps 37 NumLock and the VX5 37	The Keyboards	
Key Maps	The 95-key OWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device	
NumLock and the VX5	Key Maps	
	NumLock and the VX5	

CapsLock, Scroll Lock and the VX5	
Keyboard Backlight	
The 60-key QWERTY Keyboard	
IBM 3270 Keypad Overlay	
IBM 5250 Keypad Overlay	
Key Maps	
Unused Key Functions	
NumLock and the VX5	40
Keyboard Backlight	40
Keyboard LEDs	41
CAPS LED.	
Secondary Keys LED.	
Control Keys	
General Windows Keyboard Shortcuts	
Virtual Kayboard	
he Display	
Cleaning the Display	
Touchscreen	
Install/Remove Touchscreen Protective Film	47
Factory Default Settings	
PCMCIA/CardBus and ATA Slots	
PCMCIA Slots	48
PCMCIA Pinout	49
Install PCMCIA Cards	50
Install the 2.4GHz PCMCIA Radio	50
ATA Slot	
Install an ATA Card	
Power Supply	
External Power Supply	
Specifications	
Environmental Specifications	
Vehicle 12-80VDC Direct Connection	
VX5 Input Power Specifications	
Power Adapter Cable	
CMOS Battery	
Fuse	
APTER 3 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION	59
APTER 3 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION	

BIOS Setup	
Windows Management Instrumentation	60
Identifying BIOS Revision	61

Accessing the BIOS Setup	61
Using the Keypad	61
BIOS Setup Default Values by Option	
Main Menu Options	
Legacy Diskette (A and B)	
Primary and Secondary Master and Slave Drives	64
Advanced Menu Options	
Advanced Chipset Control	
PCI Configuration	
Keyboard Features	
NumLock	
Keyclick	
I/O Device Configuration	67
Local Bus IDE Adapter	
Serial Port (A and B)	
Onboard LPT	
USB Port / USB Host Controller	
USB BIOS Legacy Support	
Onchip USB 2 device	
Sound Blaster	
MPU-401	
Security	
Power	69
Boot	
Floppy Check	
Summary Screen	
Ouickboot Mode	69
Dark Boot	
Onhoard I AN PYE ROM	
Poot Davies Priority	
Ophoard I AN PDI POM	
Exit Monu Ontions	
Exit Notice Options	
Exit Saving Changes	
L and Satur Dafaulta	
Discord Changes	
Discalu Changes	
Save Changes	
Serial Port Pin 9	73
VMT Keyboard Backlighting	74
Microsoft Windows Setup and Configuration	74
Microsoft Windows License Agreement (First Boot)	75
Microsoft Windows 2000	75
Microsoft Windows XP	75
Drive C Directory Structure	
Software Loaded on Drive C	

Microsoft Windows Configuration	77
Touchscreen	
Calibrating the Touchscreen	
Configuring Right Click on the Touchscreen	
Disabling the Touch Screen	
Network Configuration	
2.4 GHz Wireless Radios	
Ethernet Connector	
Screen Blanking Utility	
Step 1 – Build a Loopback Cable Assembly	81
Step 2 – Uninstall Screen Control Service	82
Step 2 – Install the Screen Control Application	82.
Step 3 – Configuring the Screen Control Application	83
Operation	83
Error and Status logging	84
Uninstalling the Application	84
VX5 Delivered with No Hard Drive	
VX5 Delivered with No OS	38
Lestelling Misses & Windows with North and Chart	
Installing Microsoft Windows with Norton Gnost	80
Microsoft Windows 2000	80
Microsoft windows AP	
Installing Microsoft Windows Over a Network	
Using a PUMUIA Network Card	
Using the Ethernet Port	
Installing Microsoft Windows From a CD	
The VX5 Drivers CD-ROM	
Wavelink Avalanche Enabler Configuration	
Wavelink Avalanche and the Cisco ACU	
Briefly	
Enabler Install Process	
Enabler Uninstall Process	
Stop the Enabler Service	
Update Monitoring Overview	
Mobile Device Wireless and Network Settings	
Enabler Configuration	
File Menu Options	101
Avalanche Update Settings	
Menu Options	
Connection	
Execution	
Server Conlact	
Disnlay	

Shortcuts	. 108
Adapters	. 109
Status	111
	•

HAPTER 4 WIRELESS NETWORK CONFIGURATION	113
Introduction	
Use Windows to Configure Wireless Settings	
Summit Radio	
Summit Client Utility	
Help	
Summit Tray Icon	
Wireless Zero Config Utility and the Summit Radio	
Main Tab	
Admin Login	
Profile Tab	
Parameters	
Status Tab	
Diags Tab	
Global Settings Tab	
Parameters	
Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials	
Summit Wireless Security	
No Security	
WEP	
LEAP without WPA Authentication	
PEAP/MSCHAP	
PEAP/GTC	
WPA/LEAP	
EAP-FAST	
WPA PSK	
EAP-TLS for Summit	
EAP-TLS Configuration	
User Certificate	
Setting EAP/TLS Parameters	
Validating the Server Certificate	
Cisco Radio	
Configuration	
Profile Properties Screens	
Encryption.	
Static WEP	
LEAP	
Diagnostics	
Updating Firmware	
WPA for the Cisco Radio	17(

System Requirements	
Installing Radio drivers	
Checking for the Cisco PEAP Supplicant	
Installing/Uninstalling the Cisco PEAP Supplicant	
Wireless Network Configuration Utility	174
PEAP/MS-CHAP Configuration	
Configuring the PEAP/MS-CHAP Supplicant	
Server Authentication	
PEAP/GTC Configuration	
Configuring the PEAP/GTC Supplicant	
Validate Server Certificate	
WPA/LEAP Configuration	
Cisco ACU	
EAP-TLS Configuration	
User Certificate	
Setting EAP/TLS Parameters	
Validating the Server Certificate	
WPA PSK Configuration	
Symbol Radio	
Configuration	
Encryption (WEP)	
Diagnostics	
Updating Firmware	207
Cortificatos	200
	200
Root CA Certificate	
User Certificate	
Troubleshooting	
CHAPTER 5 TROUBLESHOOTING	213
Problem Determination Tips	
Startup Problems	
Bypassing Microsoft Windows Startup	
Verifying Boot Order.	
Setting System Time and Date	216
Hardware Problems	
Power Source	217
Keyboard	
Display	
Usplay	
DCMCIA Cords	
r UNUTA Calus	
IDO Aggigementa	
INC ASSIGNMENTS.	
Optional Devices	

Power On Self Test (POST)	
POST Error Messages	
POST Informational Messages	
If You Need Further Assistance	
Before You Call	
APPENDIX A KEY MAPS	229
95-key Keypad with Pointing Device	
Key Map 101-Key Equivalencies	
60-key Standard Keypad	
Key Map 101-Key Equivalencies	
IBM 3270 Keypad Ovelay	
IBM 5250 Keypad Overlay	
APPENDIX B TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	237
Physical Specifications	
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications	
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications Display Specifications	237 238
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications Display Specifications UPS Battery Pack Specifications	237 238 239 239
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications Display Specifications UPS Battery Pack Specifications Radio Specifications	237 238 239 239 239 240
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications Display Specifications UPS Battery Pack Specifications Radio Specifications Summit CF 2.4GHz	237 238 239 239 240 240
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications Display Specifications UPS Battery Pack Specifications Radio Specifications Summit CF 2.4GHz PCMCIA Cisco 2.4GHz Type II	237 238 239 239 240 240 240
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications Display Specifications UPS Battery Pack Specifications Radio Specifications Summit CF 2.4GHz PCMCIA Cisco 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA Symbol 11Mb 2.4GHz Type II	237 238 239 239 240
Physical Specifications Environmental Specifications Display Specifications UPS Battery Pack Specifications Radio Specifications Summit CF 2.4GHz PCMCIA Cisco 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA Symbol 11Mb 2.4GHz Type II Revision History	237 238 239 239 240 240 240 240 240 240 240 240 2

Radio and Network Problems2222.4 GHz Wireless Network222Ethernet Connection222Software Related Problems223Determining Software Revision223

Illustrations

Figure 1-1 VX5 Components Top	4
Figure 1-7 VX5 Access Panel	4
Figure 1-3 VX5 Components Front	5
Figure 1-4 VX5 Control Panel	5
Figure 1-5 VX5 Components Bottom	
Figure 1-6 Virtual Keyboard Typical Configuration	0 9
Figure 2-1 VX5 Hardware Configuration	
Figure 2-7 The Power (On/Off) Switch	18
Figure 2-2 Scapper Serial Connector (COM1)	20
Figure 2-4 The Printer/PC Serial Connector (COM2)	21
Figure 2-5 Pinout - Screen Blanking Cable	
Figure 2-6 Sample Cable for Screen Blanking	22
Figure 2-7 VX5 Keyboard Connector and External Keyboard Cable Connector	
Figure 2.9 VV5 DS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable	23
Figure 2.0 D0 Male Connector	24
Figure 2.10 DS/2 Keyboard Connector	
Figure 2 11 DS/2 Meyse Connector	
Figure 2-12 VV5 USD Connector and External USD A denter Cable Connector	23
Figure 2-12 VAS USD Connector and External USD Adapter Cable Connector	
Figure 2-15 VAS Eureline//USB Doligie Cable	
Figure 2-14 D15 Female Colliector	
Figure 2-15 Dongle Cable USB Port	
Figure 2-10 Dongle Cable Eulernet Port	
Figure 2-17 VAS Audio Jack for External Speaker of Headphones	
Figure 2-18 The Power Connector	
Figure 2-19 The UPS Battery Pack Input Connector	
Figure 2-20 The UPS Battery Future Collector	
Figure 2-21 The UPS Battery Extension Cable Input Connector	
Figure 2-22 The OPS Battery Extension Cable Output Connector	
Figure 2-23 2.4 GFZ Antennas	
Figure 2-24 KF Antenna SS Connector	
Figure 2-25 Dongle Cable USB Port	
Figure 2-20 The LAE VINT Reyboards with Cable	
Figure 2-27 The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard	
Figure 2-28 The 60-key QWERTY Keyboard	
Figure 2-29 IBM 5250 Specific Keypad	
Figure 2-30 IBM 5250 Specific Keypad	
Figure 2-31 Keyboard LEDs.	41
Figure 2-32 The CapsLock Key	
Figure 2-33 The Secondary Key	
Figure 2-34 The VMT Keyboard Display Controls.	
Figure 2-35 Virtual Keyboard, Typical Configuration	
Figure 2-30 The PCMCIA and ATA Slots	
Figure 2-37 Inserting the 2.4GHZ Type II PCMCIA Radio	
Figure 2-36 Summit Antenna Cable Connections	
Figure 2-59 Cisco Antenna Cable Connections	
Figure 2-40 Symbol 111Vib Antenna Cable Connections	
Figure 2-41 Inserting the ATA Card	
Figure 2-42 Optional Power Supply Cable	
Figure 2-45 Direct venicle Power Connection Cable (12 Ft.)	
Figure 2-44 Connecting the Power Cable to the Vehicle	
Figure 2-45 Venicle Connection Wiring Color Codes	

Figure 2-46 Power Adapter Cable, VX1/2/4 to VX5	57
Figure 2-47 Fuse Replacement	. 58
Figure 3-1 DIP Switch Location	73
Figure 3-2 Touchscreen Calibration, Targets	78
Figure 3-3 Touchscreen Calibration, Save and Exit	78
Figure 3-4 Touch Panel Configuration	79
Figure 3-5 Loop Back Cable	81
Figure 3-6 Screen Blanking Installation	82
Figure 3-7 Screen Blanking Configuration	83
Figure 3-8 Screen Control Event Log	84
Figure 3-9 Hard Drive Sled	85
Figure 3-10 Hard Drive Connector Pins	85
Figure 3-11 Avalanche Enabler Opening Screen	100
Figure 3-12 Connection Options.	103
Figure 3-13 Execution Options (Dimmed)	104
Figure 3-14 Server Contact Options	105
Figure 3-15 Startup / Shutdown Options	106
Figure 3-16 Window Display Options	107
Figure 3-17 Application Shortcuts	108
Figure 3-18 Adapters Options – Network	109
Figure 3-19 Avalanche Network Profile Displayed	110
Figure 3-20 Manual Settings Properties Panels	110
Figure 3-21 Status Display	111
Figure 4-1 Windows Wireless Network Properties	114
Figure 4-7 Summit Client Utility	115
Figure 4-3 SCU – Main Tab	117
Figure 4-4 Admin Password Entry	118
Figure 4-5 SCU – Profile Tab	110
Figure 4-6 SCU – Frome Tab	123
Figure 4-7 SCU – Diags Tab	123
Figure 4.9 SCU – Diags Tab	124
Figure 4-8 SCO – Global Sculligs Tab	123
Figure 4-9 Sign-On Scient	122
Figure 4-10 Detault Plottle	122
Figure 4-11 NO Security	122
Figure 4-12 WEP Encryption	124
Figure 4-15 WEP Keys	133
Figure 4-14 LEAP Configuration	130
Figure 4-15 LEAP Credentials	137
Figure 4-16 PEAP/MSCHAP	138
Figure 4-17 PEAP/MSCHAP Credentials	139
Figure 4-18 PEAP/MSCHAP Certificate Filename	139
Figure 4-19 PEAP/GTC.	140
Figure 4-20 PEAP/GTC Credentials	141
Figure 4-21 PEAP/GTC Certificate Filename	141
Figure 4-22 WPA/LEAP	142
Figure 4-23 WPA/LEAP Credentials	143
Figure 5-24 EAP-FAST Configuration	144
Figure 5-25 EAP-FAST Credentials	145
Figure 4-26 WPA/PSK Encryption	146
Figure 4-27 PSK Entry	147
Figure 4-28 Wireless Network System Tray Icon	148
Figure 4-29 Wireless Network Connections	148
Figure 4-30 Connection Properties, General Tab	149
Figure 4-31 Connection Properties, Wireless Networks Tab	149
Figure 4-32 Wireless Network Properties, Association Tab	150

Figure 4-33	Certificates	151
Figure 4-34	Wireless Network Association	152
Figure 4-35	Wireless Network Authentication	153
Figure 4-36	Smart Card or Certificate Properties	153
Figure 4-37	Validating Server Certificate	154
Figure 4-38	Connect to Servers	155
Figure 4-39	Validate Servers Confirmation	155
Figure 4-40	Connect to Server	156
Figure 4-41	Cisco Aironet Client Utility	157
Figure 4-42	Cisco Profile Selection Screen	158
Figure 4-43	Cisco Profile Selection Management Screen	158
Figure 4-44	Cisco Profile Manager Screen	159
Figure 4-45	Cisco Properties – System Parameters	160
Figure 4-46	Cisco Properties – RF Network	161
Figure 4-47	Cisco Properties – Advanced (Infrastructure)	162
Figure 4-48	Cisco Properties – Advanced (Ad Hoc)	163
Figure 4-49	Cisco Properties – Network Security	164
Figure 4-50	Cisco Properties – Static WEP	165
Figure 4-51	Cisco Properties – LEAP Settings	166
Figure 4-52	Cisco Link Status Meter	168
Figure 4-53	Cisco Preferences	169
Figure 4-54	Determining Cisco Installed Components	171
Figure 4-55	Access Cisco Installation Wizard	172
Figure 4-56	Cisco Installation Wizard	172
Figure 4-57	Cisco Component Installation	173
Figure 4-58	Reboat Prompt	173
Figure 4-59	Wireless Network System Tray Icon	174
Figure 4-60	Wireless Network Connections	174
Figure 4-61	Connection Properties General Tab	175
Figure 4-62	Connection Properties, Veneral Tab	175
Figure 4-63	Wireless Network Properties Association Tab	176
Figure 4-64	Wireless Network Properties, Authentication Tab	177
Figure 4-65	PFAP Properties	178
Figure 4-66	MSCHAP Properties	178
Figure 4-67	Login Screen	170
Figure 4-68	PEAP Properties	170
Figure 4-69	Connection Message Box	180
Figure $4-70$	Server Certificate Validation	180
Figure 4-71	PEAP Properties and Server Name	181
Figure $4-72$	Network Connected Box	181
Figure $4-72$	Cisco A CU Profile Selection Screen	182
Figure $4-73$	Authentication Pronerties	183
Figure $4-75$	DE A D Droperties	183
Figure 4-75	Generic Token Card Properties	187
Figure 4-77	One Time Password	184
Figure 4-77	Wireless Network Connected Message	18/
Figure $4-70$	DEAD Properties Certificate Authority	185
Figure 4.80	ACS Server Verification	185
Figure A_{-}		187
Figure 4-01	Cisco Profile Manager	187
Figure 4.92	System Daramaters	10/
Figure 4 94	Natwork Security	100
Figure 4.94	TEAD Sattings	100
Figure 4 02	Salect Drofile	107
Figure 4.97	I EAD User Name and Dassword	107
1 iguic 4-0/		1 70

Figure 4-88 Sign On Status	
Figure 4-89 Cisco Status	191
Figure 4-90 Certificates	
Figure 4-91 Wireless Network Association	
Figure 4-92 Wireless Network Authentication	
Figure 4-93 Smart Card or Certificate Properties	
Figure 4-94 Validating Server Certificate	
Figure 4-95 Connect to Servers	
Figure 4-96 Validate Servers Confirmation	
Figure 4-97 Connect to Server	197
Figure 4-98 Wireless Properties Association	198
Figure 4-99 Symbol WLAN Profiles	199
Figure 4-100 Symbol Profile – Mode	200
Figure 4-101 Symbol Profile – IP Configuration	201
Figure 4-102 Symbol Profile – Power	201
Figure 4-103 Symbol Profile – 40 bit Encryption	202
Figure 4-104 Symbol Profile – 128 bit Encryption	203
Figure 4-105 Symbol Status – Signal	204
Figure 4-106 Symbol Status – Information	
Figure 4-107 Symbol Status – IP Status	205
Figure 4-108 Symbol Status – Ping Test	
Figure 4-109 Symbol Status – AP's	
Figure 4-110 Symbol – Available WLANs	207
Figure 4-111 Logon to Certificate Authority	
Figure 4-112 Certificate Services Welcome Screen	
Figure 4-113 Download CA Certificate Screen	
Figure 4-114 File Download Confirmation	
Figure 4-115 Certificate Install	
Figure 4-116 Certificates	211
Figure 4-117 Windows Wireless Network Properties	
Figure A-1 95-Key VMT QWERTY Keyboard	229
Figure A-2 60-Key VMT QWERTY Keyboard	
Figure A-3 IBM 3270 Specific Keypad	
Figure A-4 IBM 5250 Specific Keypad	

Chapter 1 Introduction

Overview

The VX5 Vehicle Mount Computer (VMC) is a rugged, vehicle mounted, PC (Personal Computer) running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system and capable of wireless data communications from a fork-lift truck or any properly configured vehicle. The VX5 provides the power and functionality of a desktop computer in a vehicle mounted unit, with a wide range of options:

CPU	933MHz PIII
Memory	256 or 512MB SDRAM
Display	Indoor or Outdoor 12.1" display, integrated Touchscreen, adjustable brightness
Network connectivity	2.4 Wireless LAN radio (single or dual antenna) Ethernet port
Audio	Speakers in front bezel, audio jack for headset with microphone
Storage media ¹	Removable rotating Compact Flash PCMCIA
Operating system	Microsoft Windows 2000 or XP Professional No operating system
Other options	Extended temperature version (512MB RAM only) RAM Mount TM vehicle mounting

For information on installing Microsoft Windows on a VX5 ordered with no operating system, please refer to Chapter 3, "System Configuration", section titled "VX5 Delivered with No OS".

Microsoft Windows License Agreement (First Boot)



If your VX5 is shipped with a Microsoft Windows operating system pre-installed, it is necessary to complete the Windows licensing/registration screens when starting the VX5 for the first time. To complete this information, you need the Microsoft Windows software/product key that was included with the VX5.

Please refer to Chapter 3 "System Configuration", section titled "Microsoft Windows License Agreement (First Boot)" for instruction.



The "VX5 User's Guide" is directed toward the VX5 user. It is delivered on the LXE Documentation CD. It contains safety warnings, descriptions of the controls and connectors, instruction on installing antennas, and day to day operation.

¹ The available storage media types and capacity may vary depending on date of manufacture and other VX5 options. Contact your LXE representative for details.

When to Use this Guide

As the reference for LXE's VX5 equipped with a Microsoft Windows operating system, this guide provides detailed information on its features and functionality. Use this guide as you would any other source book -- reading portions to learn about the VX5, and then referring to it when you need more information about a particular subject.

This chapter, **"Introduction"**, briefly describes this reference guide structure, contains setup and installation instruction, briefly describes data entry processes, and explains how to get help.

Chapter 2 "Physical Description and Layout" describes the function and layout of the controls and connectors on the VX5. Also included is information on the AC power and DC power connections.

Chapter 3 "System Configuration" takes you through the BIOS Setup, hardware configuration, VX5 file structure, system files and Microsoft Windows configuration.

Chapter 4 "Wireless Network Configuration" presents information and instruction for using and managing radio cards in the VX5.

Chapter 5 "Troubleshooting" is split into several areas. The solution may be found in one area or it may be a combination of the solutions in several areas. It contains a listing of Power On Self Test (POST) messages and run time messages.

Appendix A "Key Maps" describes the keypress sequences for the LXE VMC keyboard.

Appendix B "Technical Specifications" lists technical specifications including physical, environmental, display and the radios.



Document Conventions

This reference guide uses the following document conventions:

ALL CAPS	All caps are used to represent disk directories, file names, and application names.
Menu Choice	Rather than use the phrase "choose the Save command from the File menu", this guide uses the convention "choose File Save ".
"Quotes"	Indicates the title of a book, chapter or a section within a chapter (for example, "Document Conventions").
< >	Indicates a key on the keyboard (for example, <enter>).</enter>
	Indicates a reference to other documentation.
¥	Differences in operation or commands due to radio type.
₹ ⊮	Differences in operation or commands due to operating system.
ATTENTION	Keyword that indicates vital or pivotal information to follow.
<u>!</u>	Attention symbol that indicates vital or pivotal information to follow. Also, when marked on product, means to refer to the manual or user's guide.
	International fuse replacement symbol. When marked on the product, the label includes fuse ratings in volts (v) and amperes (a) for the product.
Note:	Keyword that indicates immediately relevant information.
Caution	Keyword that indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.
WARNING	Keyword that indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
DANGER	Keyword that indicates an imminent hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

Quick Start

This section's instructions are based on the assumption that your new system is pre-configured and requires only accessory installation (e.g. antenna, external keyboard and/or barcode scanner) and a power source.

In general, the sequence of events is:

- 1. Install Vehicle Mounting Bracket (and keyboard mounting bracket) on vehicle.
- 2. Secure VX5 in Mounting Bracket Assembly.
- 3. Connect power cable to the VX5. The power cable can also be connected to a UPS battery pack, which is then connected to the VX5.
- 4. Connect power cable to the VX5.
- 5. Connect accessories to VX5, e.g. scanner, antenna, keyboard.
- 6. Secure all cables to the VX5 with the Strain Relief Cable Clamps.
- 7. Turn the VX5 on.

The VX5 and its keyboard should be mounted in an area in the vehicle where it:

- Does not obstruct the vehicle driver's vision or safe vehicle operation.
- Can be easily accessed by anyone seated in the driver's seat.

Components



- 1 Access Panel Cover (See Following Illustrations for Detail)
- 2 Antenna Connectors or Hole Plugs

Figure 1-1 VX5 Components, Top

1 COM Port DIP Switches 2 USB Connector 3 ATA Slot (PCMCIA / Compact Flash) 4 CardBus (PCMCIA) 5 IDE Drive

Figure 1-2 VX5 Access Panel

Note: The tethered access panel cover is not shown in the illustration above.



- 1 Speakers
- 2 Control Panel (See Following Illustrations for Detail)

Figure 1-3 VX5 Components, Front



Figure 1-4 VX5 Control Panel

- 1 COM1/Scanner Connector
- 2 COM2 Connector
- 3 Keyboard/Mouse Connector
- 4 Ethernet/USB Cable Connector
- 5 Fuse
- 6 Audio Connector
- 7 Power Cable Connector
- 8 Cable Strain Relief Bracket and Clips

Figure 1-5 VX5 Components, Bottom

Ð

7

0

8

3

2

1

0

4

5

6

Note: By default, COM1 is configured with Pin 9 +5V and COM2 (labeled either "COM2" or "COM2/3") is configured with Pin 9 RI. Refer to Chapter 3, "System Configuration", for more information.



Data Entry

You can enter data into the VX5 through several different methods. A tethered scanner connected to the COM1 serial port provides barcode data entry, the serial ports are used to input/output data, keyboards provide manual entry and the touchscreen also provides manual entry (simulating a desktop PC's mouse).

Keyboard Data Entry



Refer to "Appendix A - Key Maps" for 101-key keyboard equivalent keypresses.

The keyboard is used to manually input data that is not collected otherwise. Almost any function that a full sized computer keyboard can provide is duplicated on the LXE VMT keyboard but it may take a few more keystrokes to accomplish a keyed task.

When using the LXE 60-key keyboard. almost every key has two or three different functions. The primary alpha or numeric character is printed on the key.

For example, when the $<2^{nd}>$ key is selected pressing the desired second-function key produces the $<2^{nd}>$ character i.e. $<2^{nd}> + <F1>$ toggles the CAPS Lock function. The specific $<2^{nd}>$ character is printed above the corresponding key.

Please refer to "Appendix A - Key Maps" for instruction on the specific keypresses to access all PC-compatible keyboard functions.

Barcode Data Entry

The VX5 supports an accessory barcode label reading device. Keyboard data entries can be mixed with barcode data entries. Any scanner that decodes the barcode internally and outputs an RS-232 data stream may be used. COM port 1 is designed to be used with a hand held tethered barcode scanner.

COM1 is set to +5V on pin 9 up to accept input from a barcode scanner by default. COM2 pin 9 is set to RI. To change the default settings for pin 9 on either port, refer to Chapter 3: "System Configuration" section titled "Serial Port Pin 9" for details.

RS-232 Data Entry

The VX5 accepts input from an RS-232 device connected to either RS-232 port, COM1 or COM2. The data is entered at the cursor position, and the data is subject to all of the barcode/RS-232 input menu parameters, such as truncate.

Touchscreen Entry

Note: The touch screen should be calibrated before initial use. See "Touchscreen Calibration" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration".

Note: Always use the point of the stylus for tapping or making strokes on the display. Never use an actual pen, pencil or sharp object to write on the touch screen.

The touchscreen input performs the same function as the mouse that is used to point to and click elements on a desk top computer. A stylus is used in the same manner as a mouse – single tap or double tap to select menu options, drag the stylus across text to select, hold the stylus down to activate slider bars, etcetera. Right click is accomplished via the $\langle Ctrl \rangle$ key, either as pressing of the $\langle Ctrl \rangle$ key followed by a screen touch or holding the $\langle Ctrl \rangle$ key down flowed by a screen touch. Please refer to "Configuring Right Click on the Touchscreen" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration" for more details.

Note: For the 60-key keyboard, the right click MUST BE configured as holding the <Crtl> key followed by a screen touch.

Hold the stylus as if it were a pen or pencil. Touch an element on the screen with the tip of the stylus then remove the stylus from the screen. The touch screen responds to an actuation force (touch) of up to 4 oz. of pressure.

The touch screen can be used in conjunction with the keyboard and scanner and an input/output device connected to one of the VX5's serial ports.

- Touch the stylus to the field of the data entry form to receive the next data feed.
- The cursor begins to flash in the field.
- The unit is ready to accept data from either the keyboard, integrated scanner or a device connected to a serial port.
- *Note:* The touchscreen may be disabled. Please refer to "Disabling the Touchscreen" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration" for details.

Virtual Keyboard

The optional My-T-Soft[®] software provides a virtual keyboard on the touchscreen. To start the virtual keyboard, click on the My-T-Soft icon on the desktop or select **Start | Programs | My-T-Soft | My-T-Soft | My-T-Soft.**

The virtual keyboard provides several configuration options, including:

- Keyboard size
- QWERTY vs. ABCD
- Standard 101 key format vs. Windows 104 key format

For more information on configuring the virtual keyboard, click on **Start | Programs | My-T-Soft** | **My-T-Soft Setup.**

Esc		F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	E	9 F1	0 F1	1 F12	Prt	Ser	Pau	Ca	P N	um S			Kybd	Help
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	-	=	←	Ins	Hme	Рир	Num	7	Ŧ	- 1		Edit	Info
Tab	9	W	e	r	t	ч	U	i	0	Р	E	1		Del	End	Pdn	2	8	9	+	202 F 8007 2020	Num	Win
Caps	a	s	Ы	f	و	h	j	k	1	;		Er	- nter				4	5	6		725 772 20	Mag	Пасго
Shi	ift	z	x	С	<	Ь	п	m	•	-	Ν	Shif	t 📐		1		1	2	3	_		SzUp	Calc
Ctrl		Al	t	Ľ	പള	j="Li			մ՝մ	;	Alt		Ctrl	Ţ	Ļ	-	e)	•			SzDn	Exit

Figure 1-6 Virtual Keyboard, Typical Configuration

Virtual keyboards display the actual character the keypress outputs. For example, pressing the <Shift> key on the virtual keyboard toggles the characters displayed on the keys between upper and lower case.

Note: When the virtual keyboard is displayed, the physical keyboard is still active, if attached. Therefore it is possible to input data from both keyboards.

Getting Help

All LXE manuals are now available on one CD and they can also be viewed/downloaded from the LXE website. Contact your LXE representative to obtain the LXE Manuals CD.

You can also get help from LXE by calling the telephone numbers listed on the LXE Manuals CD, in the file titled "Contacting LXE". This information is also available on the LXE website www.lxe.com.

Explanations of terms and acronyms used in this guide are located in the file titled "Glossary" on the LXE Manuals CD.

Manuals and Accessories

Manuals

The following manuals are available on the LXE Manuals CD:

- VX5 User's Guide
- RFTerm[®] Reference Guide
- Contacting LXE
- LXE Technical Glossary

Accessories

The table below lists the available VX5 accessories.

- Where two parts numbers are listed for a given part, the part number ending in "-R" is the RoHS compliant version.
- When only one part number is listed, the part is RoHS compliant unless otherwise noted.

VX5 Brackets	
Bracket, U Style, VX5	VX5A001UBRACKET-R
Bracket, U Style w/ Integrated Keyboard Mount, VX5	VX5A001UBRKTWKBDMNT-R
Kit, VXX U-Bracket to VX5 Adapter	VX5A002BRKTADPTKIT-R
Kit, VXX U-Bracket to VX5 Adapter w/ Keyboard Mount	VX5A002BRKTADPKBDMNT-R
Bracket, RAM Mount, VX5	VX5A003BRKTRAMMOUNT-R
Bracket, Combo RAM VMT Mount w/ Keyboard Mount, VX5	VX5A003BRKTRAMWKBMNT-R
Bracket, RAM Squeeze Mount, VX5	VX5A007BRKTRAMSQZMNT-R
Bracket, RAM Squeeze Mount w/ Keyboard Mount, VX5	VX5A008BRKTRAMSQKBMT-R
Bracket, RAM Backup Mounting Plate	90000A033BACKUPPLATE
Bracket, Back, VX5 with Isolators	VX5A006BRKTRAMPARTS-R
Custom RAM ball for VX5 Back Bracket	9000A028RAMPLATEBALL-R
Special RAM kit without keyboard mount	VX5A010RAMKIT1
Special RAM kit with keyboard mount	VX5A011RAMKIT2
Std. RAM ball used in VX5A003BRKTRAMWKBMNT-R kit	990014-0003
Std. RAM arm used in VX5A003BRKTRAMWKBMNT-R kit	990014-0004
Standard RAM Squeeze ball	990014-0011
Keyboard Brackets	
Bracket, Keyboard, Integrated U Style, VX5	VX5A004BRKTUMOUNT-R
Bracket, Keyboard, RAM Mount, VX5 VX7	9000A017BRKTKBDRAM-R
Bracket, Remote, Keyboard, LXE	9000A021BRKTRMTLXE 9000A012BRKTRMTLXE-R
Bracket, Remote, Mouse Keyboard	9000A018BRKTMKBDRMT 9000A018BRKTMKBDRMT-R
Keyboards	
Keyboard, LXE Standard, D9, ANSI/PC Overlay, QWERTY	9000A157KBDSTDD9ANSI 9000A157KBDSTDD9ANSI-R
Keyboard, LXE Standard, D9, 5250 Overlay, QWERTY	9000A158KBDSTDD95250-R
Keyboard, LXE Standard, D9, 3270 Overlay, QWERTY	9000A159KBDSTDD93270 9000A159KBDSTDD93270-R
Keyboard, Rugged PC Style w/Mouse, PS2 D9	9000A160MOUSEKBDD9-R

Data Cables	
Cable, Combo D15 to USB and Ethernet Adapter 1 Ft	9000A071CBLD15USBETH
Cable, Combo D15 to USB-H, USB-C and Ethernet Adapter	9000A075CBLUSBHCETH
Cable, Keyboard/Mouse Dual PS2 Adapter 1 Ft	9000A072CBLD9DUALPS2
Cable, Printer/PC, D9 to D25	9000A053CBL6D9D25 (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Cable, PC, D9 to D9	9000A054CBL6D9D9
Note: Cable 9000A075CBLUSBHCETH (Cable, Combo Di Adapter) can be used in place of 9000A071CBLD15 port is not supported when 9000A075CBLUSBHCE	15 to USB-H, USB-C and Ethernet USBETH. However, the USB-Client TTH is used with the VX5.
Power Cables	
Cable, Input Power, 12 FT, VX5 VX6 VX7	9000A073CBLPWR12FT-R
Adapter Cable, VX1 VX2 VX4 Power Cable to VX5 VX6 VX7	9000A077CBLPWRADPTR
Power Supplies	
Power Supply, External, AC, W/US Power Cord VX5 VX6 VX7	9000A318PSACUS-R
Power Supply, External, AC, No Power Cord VX5 VX6 VX7	9000A318PSACWW-R
UPS Battery and Cables	
Battery, UPS Lead Acid, VX5 VX6 VX7	9000A378UPSBATTPACK-R
Cable, UPS Battery, Remote Mount Extender, 6 Ft	9000A074CBLUPSEXTNDR
Antenna and Antenna Mount Kits	
Replacement antenna, 2.4GHz	153180-0001
Remote Mount Antenna Assembly Kit, 8 Ft Cable	9000A279ANTREMOTE8-R
Remote Mount Antenna Assembly Kit, 6 Ft Cable	9000A278ANTREMOTE6-R
Right Angle Remote Mount Antenna Assembly Kit, 6 Ft Cable	9000A280ANTREMOTE6RT
Right Angle Remote Mount Antenna Assembly Kit, 15 Ft Cable	9000A281ANTREMOT15RT
Miscellaneous	
Stylus, with Tethers and Sleeves, 5 Pack	9000A510STYLUS
Media BC-WEDGE TM DOS/Windows Taltech Floppy	9000A485BCWEDGEMEDIA
On-Screen Software Keyboard Windows 95 Through XP	11201 MY-T-SOFT
Protective Film, 12 in Display, 10 Pack, VX5 VX7	9000A511PROTFILM12IN
Software, Drivers, VX5	VX5A477DRIVERS
Bracket, Hard Drive Kit	VX5A005HDDBRACKETKIT-R
Printers	
Zebra, PA400, 240VAC, EC	PA400-050-12100 (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Zebra, PA400, 120VAC, US	PA400-050-11100 (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Zebra, PA400, 20-80VDC	PA400-050-99100 (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Zebra, PT400, 240VAC, EC	PT400-050-12100 (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Zebra, PT400, 120VAC, US	PT400-050-11100 (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Zebra, PT400, 20-80VDC	PT400-050-99100 (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)

Scanners	
Scanner, Powerscan, SR, 8' Cbl, WW	8300A326SCNRPWRSR8DA9F 8300A326SCNRPWRSR8DA9F-R
Scanner, Powerscan, SR, 12' Cbl, US	8300A327SCNRPWRSR12DA9F (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, Powerscan, SR, Low Temp, 8' Cbl	8300A332SCNRS8D9FLT (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, Powerscan, SR, Low Temp, 12' Cbl	8300A333SCNRS12D9FLT (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, Powerscan, LR, 8' Cbl, WW	8310A326SCNRPWRLR8DA9F 8310A326SCNRPWRLR8DA9F-R
Scanner, Powerscan, LR, 12' Cbl, US	8310A327SCNRPWRLR12DA9F 8310A327SCNRPWRLR12DA9F-R
Scanner, Powerscan, LR, Low Temp, 8' Cbl	8310A332SCNRL8D9FLT (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, Powerscan, LR, Low Temp, 12' Cbl	8310A333SCNRL12D9FLT (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, Powerscan, XLR, 8' Cbl, WW	8320A326SCNRPWRXLR8DA9F 8320A326SCNRPWRXLR8DA9F-R
Scanner, Powerscan, XLR, 12' Cbl, US	8320A327SCNRPWRXLR12DA9F (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, Powerscan, XLR, Low Temp, 8' Cbl	8320A332SCNRX8D9FLT (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, Powerscan, XLR, Low Temp, 12' Cbl	8320A333SCNRX12D9FLT (above part is <i>not</i> RoHS compliant)
Scanner, LS3408 Fuzzy Logic SR, D9 Interface Cable, 8ft	8510A326SCNRFZYDA9F 8510A326SCNRFZYDA9F-R
Scanner, LS3408 Extended Range, D9 Interface Cable, 8ft	8520A326SCNRERDA9F-R

Chapter 2 Physical Description and Layout

Hardware Configuration

System Hardware

The VX5 hardware configuration is shown in the following figure.



Figure 2-1 VX5 Hardware Configuration

Central Processing Unit

The LXE VX5 contains an Intel Pentium III 933 MHz CPU.

AT Compatible Core Logic

The LXE VX5 utilizes AT-compatible core logic. The VX5 supports the following I/O components:

- Two 9-pin RS-232 serial ports configured as:
 - o COM 1 03F8h; IRQ4 (SCANNER port, labeled "COM1/SCANNER),
 - COM 2 02F8h; IRQ3 (PRINTER/PC port, labeled either "COM2" or " COM2/3")

Note: There is no COM3 port on a VX5.

- Two CardBus slots (supporting Type I, II or III PCMCIA cards), accepts two (2) Type II cards or one (1) Type III card.
- One slot for ATA memory cards supporting PCMCIA or compact flash format, configured as secondary IDE.
- Primary IDE, usually an internal hard drive.
- LXE VMT or standard PS/2 keyboard (via a watertight connector).
- Two USB ports, conforming to USB 1.0 specifications
 - o One external USB port via dongle cable
 - One internal USB port accessible by removing access panel cover.
- One audio jack providing monaural audio output.
- Ethernet port via dongle cable.
- *Note:* Using switches inside the user access panel, Pin 9 of COM1 and COM2 may be configured to provide 5 volts DC to power a barcode scanner or RI for serial transfer.

System Memory

Main system memory is 256 or 512MB SDRAM.

Upper Memory Block

The upper memory area, or Upper Memory Block (UMB), consists of memory between 640KB and 1 MB. It occupies the address range A0000H – FFFFFH and includes the areas used to shadow various system software components.

Flash BIOS

256KB of flash BIOS memory is included.

Video Subsystem

The LXE VX5 video subsystem consists of a color TFT display. The video subsystem complies with the VESA VL bus standard. The resolution of this display is 800 by 600 pixels. This resolution complies with the SVGA graphics industry standard.

The AGP video controller uses a portion of the system memory. As installed in the VX5, the video controller uses about 2MB of system memory.

The display supports screen blanking to eliminate driver distraction when the vehicle is in motion. Please see "Technical Specifications – Screen Blanking Cable" later in this chapter and "Screen Blanking Service" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration" for details.

Power Input

Vehicle power input for the VX5 is 12V to 80V DC nominal and is accepted without the need to perform any manual operation within the VX5.

If 12V to 60V DC power is not available – for example, in an office environment – an optional external Universal Input Power Supply can be used to convert AC wall power to an appropriate DC level. See "Power Supply", later in this chapter, sub-section titled "External Power Supply."

Power input is fused for protection and the fuse is externally accessible.

Uninterruptible Power Supply

A DC uninterruptible power supply (UPS) battery is available to maintain power to the VX5 for a minimum of 15 minutes when vehicle power is not available (such as when a vehicle battery is being swapped).

Backup Battery

The LXE VX5 has a permanent lithium battery installed to maintain time, date and BIOS setup information. The backup battery is not user serviceable and should last five years with normal use before it requires replacement.

Note: This battery should only be changed by authorized service personnel.

PCMCIA Slots

Microsoft Windows Plug and Play operating system controls the CardBus/PCMCIA cards. These cards are hot swappable per the CardBus/PCMCIA specifications.

The ATA slot is not hot swappable. The VX5 must be powered down to insert or remove an ATA card.

Power Management

The VX5 uses Microsoft Windows Power Management. The VX5 has two operating modes: Normal and Standby.

In Normal operating mode all systems are powered up and the video display is on. The RS-232 ports, any installed PCMCIA cards are active. However, Microsoft Windows also allows the display and hard disks to be shut down in normal mode to conserve energy.

The Standby mode shuts down many devices such as the display and hard drives. For complete details on the standby mode, please refer to the Microsoft Windows help screens.

Physical Controls

On/Off Switch

The power (on/off) switch is a push button switch located on the front control panel of the VX5. The switch is a momentary switch. If the VX5 is Off, pressing the power switch turns the VX5 On. If the VX5 is On, Windows determines the results of a power button press. For example, the VX5 may be configured to:

- Shut down
- Hibernate
- Ignore the power button press
- Ask user to choose.

Pressing and holding the power switch for several seconds forces a reboot.

The Status LED, located on the VX5 control panel is lit when the power is on:

- Green VX5 is operating from vehicle power or AC power.
- Solid Yellow VX5 is operating from the UPS, UPS battery is good.
- Flashing Yellow VX5 is operating from the UPS, UPS battery is critically low.

Note: Always turn the computer off prior to removing power cables.



Figure 2-2 The Power (On/Off) Switch

The VX5 is designed for a controlled shutdown when using the power switch. A controlled shutdown first closes any open programs, and then shuts down the Windows operating system. DO NOT remove power from the VX5 without shutting down the VX5.

The VX5 shutdown may be initiated in any of the following ways:

- Selecting the "Shut Down" option from the Windows Start Menu.
- Selecting the "Shut Down" option from the Windows Task Manager. The Windows Task Manager is displayed by pressing Ctrl-Alt-Del.
- Momentarily pressing and releasing the power button. The VX5 behavior when the power button is pressed can be configured in the Windows Control Panel.
- Pressing and holding the power button for approximately five seconds. Any open programs and the Windows operating system are shut down before power off. Note that this option must be used to shut down when the operating system is not responding.



For more information on the Windows shutdown process, please refer to the Windows help function or commercially available Windows help guides.

External Connectors

Most external connectors for the VX5 are located on the bottom of the unit.

- The Keyboard/Mouse connector accepts an LXE VMT keyboard or a dongle cable for a PS/2 keyboard and mouse.
- COM 1 connects to a serial barcode scanner cable.
- COM 2 connects to a serial printer or PC with the appropriate cables.
- The USB/Ethernet connector accepts a dongle cable providing a USB port and Ethernet port.
- Audio connects to a mono telephone headset/microphone.
- Note: Pin 9 of the COM ports can be switched between +5V and RI to change between a barcode scanner and a serial port printer or PC cable. See Chapter 3: "System Configuration" section titled "Serial Port Pin 9". The COM2 port is labeled either "COM2" or "COM2/3".

Other external connectors are located as follows:

- Antenna connectors are located on the top of the VX5. VX5's can be configured for a single antenna or dual antennas.
- A USB port is available inside the access panel.

Scanner Serial Connector (COM1)

The serial connector, with a SCANNER label, (configured as COM1) is industry-standard RS-232. The connector includes a PC/AT standard 9–pin "D" male connector. Jumpers on the system board control the function of pin 9. Pin 9 is capable of supplying +5 VDC at 0.4A (max) for an external bar code scanner. Refer to Chapter 3: "System Configuration" section titled "Serial Port Pin 9" for more information on configuring pin 9.

If COM1 is not being used for a scanner, it can also be used for screen blanking when the vehicle is in motion. Please see "Technical Specifications – Screen Blanking Cable" in the following section for more details.



Figure 2-3 Scanner Serial Connector (COM1)

Pin	Signal	Description
1	DCD	Data Carrier Detect – Input
2	RXD	Receive Data – Input
3	TXD	Transmit Data – Output
4	DTR	Data Terminal Ready – Output
5	GND	Signal/Power Ground
6	DSR	Data Set Ready – Input
7	RTS	Request to Send – Output
8	CTS	Clear to Send – Input
9	+5VDC	Barcode Scanner Power – 400mA max (Default)
	or	or
	RI	Ring Indicator – Input
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

Note: Pin 9 of the COM port can be switched between +5V and RI. See Chapter 3: "System Configuration" section titled "Serial Port Pin 9".

Pinout
Printer/PC Serial Connector (COM2)

The COM2 serial connector, with either a "COM2" or a "COM2/3" label, is an industry-standard RS-232 9-pin "D" connector. The connector and its pin assignments are shown below.



Figure 2-4 The Printer/PC Serial Connector (COM2)

Pin	Signal	Description
1	DCD	Data Carrier Detect – Input
2	RXD	Receive Data – Input
3	TXD	Transmit Data – Output
4	DTR	Data Terminal Ready – Output
5	GND	Signal/Power Ground
6	DSR	Data Set Ready – Input
7	RTS	Request to Send – Output
8	CTS	Clear to Send – Input
9	RI	Ring Indicator – Input (default)
	or +5VDC	or Bar Code Scanner Power – 400mA max
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

Note: Pin 9 of the COM port can be switched between +5V and RI. See Chapter 3: "System Configuration" section titled "Serial Port Pin 9".

Pinout

21

Technical Specifications – Screen Blanking Cable

The customer must supply their own cable. The cable must be designed so that pin 7 (RTS – Request to Send Output) and pin 8 (Clear to Send Input) of a D9 female connector provide continuity only when the vehicle is stopped (for example, via a switch on the accelerator pedal of the fork truck). All other pins on the connector must be left unconnected. If pins 7 and 8 do not provide continuity (or the cable is removed), the VX5 screen remains blank.

Serial cable:

Customer built cable with the following specifications:



Pinout:

DB9 female	Function
1	Not Used
2	Not Used
3	Not Used
4	Not Used
5	Not Used
6	Not Used
7	No signal when in motion, Continuity to Pin 8 when stopped
8	No signal when in motion, Continuity to Pin 7 when stopped
9	Not Used

Figure 2-5 Pinout – Screen Blanking Cable



Figure 2-6 Sample Cable for Screen Blanking

Please refer to "Screen Blanking Utility" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration", for information on the screen blanking application.

Keyboard/Mouse Connector

The VX5 external keyboard connector accepts:

- An LXE VMT keyboard with integrated pointing device
- An LXE VMT keyboard without integrated pointing device
- A dongle cable providing PS/2 connections for a standard PS/2 keyboard and mouse.



Figure 2-7 VX5 Keyboard Connector and External Keyboard Cable Connector

The +5V supply available from the connector is current limited at 400mA.

Pin	Signal	Description
1	KBDAT_A	Keyboard Data
2	MSDAT_A	Mouse Data
3	_	Not Connected
4	MSCLK_A	Mouse Clock
5	DGND	System Ground
6	_	Not Connected
7	KBCLK_A	Keyboard Clock
8	/BL_ENABLE	Keyboard Backlight Enable
9	KDB_PWR	Keyboard Power, 5V
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable

The PS/2 keyboard/mouse dongle cable allows a standard PS/2 keyboard and/or mouse to be attached to the VX5. The PS/2 connectors on the dongle cable are labeled for keyboard and mouse.



Figure 2-8 VX5 PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse Dongle Cable

D9 Male Connector



Figure 2-9 D9 Male Connector

Pin	Signal	Description
1	KBDAT_A	Keyboard Data
2	MSDAT_A	Mouse Data
3	_	Not Connected
4	MSCLK_A	Mouse Clock
5	DGND	System Ground
6	_	Not Connected
7	KBCLK_A	Keyboard Clock
8	/BL_ENABLE	Keyboard Backlight Enable
9	KB_PWR	Keyboard Power, 5V
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

PS/2 Keyboard Connector



Figure 2-10 PS/2 Keyboard Connector

Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description
1	KBDAT_A	Keyboard Data
2	_	Not Connected
3	DGND	System Ground
4	KBD_PWR	Keyboard Power, 5V
5	KBCLK_A	Keyboard Clock
6	_	Not Connected
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

PS/2 Mouse



Figure 2-11 PS/2 Mouse Connector

Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description
1	MSDAT_A	Mouse Data
2	_	Not Connected
3	DGND	System Ground
4	KBD_PWR	Keyboard Power, 5V
5	MSCLK_A	Mouse Clock
6	_	Not Connected
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

25

Ethernet/USB Connector

The VX5 Ethernet/USB connector accepts a dongle cable that provides a USB port and an Ethernet port. The connector is shown below.



Figure 2-12 VX5 USB Connector and External USB Adapter Cable Connector

Pin	Signal	Description
1	USB2N A	USB D –
2		Not Connected
2	_	Not Connected
4	RXP	Receive +
5	RXN	Receive _
6	USB2P A	USB D +
7	DGND	USB Power Return
8	_	Not Connected
9	RJ45 45	RJ45 Pins 4 and 5 Connections
10	RJ45_78	RJ45. Pins 7 and 8 Connections
11	5V USB 23	USB Power, Current Limited
12	_	Not Connected
13	_	Not Connected
14	TXN	Transmit –
15	ТХР	Transmit +
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground



Figure 2-13 VX5 Ethernet/USB Dongle Cable

D15 Female Connector



Figure 2-14 D15 Female Connector

Pin	Signal	Description
1	USB2N_A	USB D –
2	_	Not Connected
3	_	Not Connected
4	RXP	Receive +
5	RXN	Receive –
6	USB2P_A	USB D +
7	DGND	USB Power Return
8	_	Not Connected
9	RJ45_45	RJ45, Pins 4 and 5 Connections
10	RJ45_78	RJ45, Pins 7 and 8 Connections
11	5V_USB_23	USB Power, Current Limited
12	_	Not Connected
13	_	Not Connected
14	TXN	Transmit –
15	ТХР	Transmit +
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

USB Connector



Figure 2-15 Dongle Cable USB Port

Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description
1	5V_USB_23	USB Power, Current Limited
2	USB2N_A	USD D –
3	USB2P_A	USB D +
4	DGND	USB Power Return
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

RJ45 Connector



Figure 2-16 Dongle Cable Ethernet Port

Pin	Signal	Description
1	ТХР	Transmit +
2	TXN	Transmit –
3	RXP	Receive +
4	_	Not Connected
5	-	Not Connected
6	RXN	Receive –
7	_	Not Connected
8	_	Not Connected

Audio Connector

The VX5 audio connector accepts a headset with a 2.5mm plug, such as a mono telephone headset with microphone.



Figure 2-17 VX5 Audio Jack for External Speaker or Headphones

Note: The VX5 is not configured for standard PC speakers.

Pin	Description
1	Microphone (Not connected in VX5)
2	Speaker
3	Ground

Power Supply Connector

Power is supplied to the VX5 through the power connector. Additionally this assembly provides a connection point for the vehicle's chassis ground to be connected internally to the conductive chassis of the computer.

The VX5 internal power supply can accept DC input voltages in the range of 12 to 80 Volts.



Figure 2-18 The Power Connector

Pin	Signal
1	DC Positive (+)
2	UPS Battery Positive (+)
3	Chassis Ground
4	UPS Battery Negative (-)
5	DC Negative (-)

UPS Battery Pack Connectors

Input



Figure 2-19 The UPS Battery Pack Input Connector

Pinout

Pin	Signal	
1	DC Positive (+)	
2	Not used	
3	Chassis Ground	
4	Not used	
5	DC Negative (-)	

Output



Figure 2-20 The UPS Battery Pack Output Connector

Pin	Signal
1	DC Positive (+)
2	UPS Battery Positive (+)
3	Chassis Ground
4	UPS Battery Negative (-)
5	DC Negative (-)

UPS Battery Extension Cable Connectors

Input



Figure 2-21 The UPS Battery Extension Cable Input Connector

Pinout

 DC Positive (+) UPS Battery Positive (+) Chassis Ground UPS Battery Negative (-) 	Pin	Signal
 2 UPS Battery Positive (+) 3 Chassis Ground 4 UPS Battery Negative (-) 5 DC Negative (-) 	1	DC Positive (+)
 3 Chassis Ground 4 UPS Battery Negative (-) 5 DC Negative (-) 	2	UPS Battery Positive (+)
4 UPS Battery Negative (–)	3	Chassis Ground
5 DC Nagativa ()	4	UPS Battery Negative (-)
5 DC Negative (-)	5	DC Negative (-)

Output



Figure 2-22 The UPS Battery Extension Cable Output Connector

Pin	Signal
1	DC Positive (+)
2	UPS Battery Positive (+)
3	Chassis Ground
4	UPS Battery Negative (-)
5	DC Negative (-)

Antenna Connector

Note: VX5's equipped with a radio require an external antenna. A VX5 without a radio does not use an antenna. Some VX5's may be equipped with a dual antenna option. For these VX5's, an external antenna must be connected to each antenna connector.



Figure 2-24 RF Antenna SS Connector

Vehicle Remote Antenna Mount

The external antenna (or antennas) can be remotely mounted on the vehicle. Please refer to the "Vehicle Remote Mount Antenna Installation Sheet" for details.

Internal USB Port

An internal USB port can be accessed by removing the access panel cover. This port conforms to USB 1.0 specifications.



Figure 2-25 Dongle Cable USB Port

Pin	Signal	Description
1	5V_USB_23	USB Power, Current Limited
2	USB2N_A	USD D –
3	USB2P_A	USB D +
4	DGND	USB Power Return
Shell	CGND	Chassis Ground

The Keyboards

The following keyboard options are available for the VX5:

The LXE VMT keyboards are customized rugged keyboards, connected to the VX5 via a watertight connector. The keyboards are available in the following configurations:

- LXE VMT 95-key QWERTY keyboard with integrated pointing device a customized rugged keyboard connected to the VX5 via a watertight connector.
- LXE VMT 60-key QWERTY keyboard a customized rugged keyboard connected to the VX5 via a watertight connector
- A standard PS/2 keyboard via an adapter cable attached to the "Keyboard/MOUSE" port on the VX5. The adapter cable also provides a connector for a PS/2 mouse.
- A software keyboard, or virtual keyboard, can be displayed on the touch screen. The virtual keyboard can be used in place of, or in addition to, a physical keyboard.

For more details on each keyboard type, please refer to the appropriate section later in this chapter.



95 key with Integrated Pointing Device



60 key

Figure 2-26 The LXE VMT Keyboards with Cable

The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device

Designed for ease of use with Windows operating systems, the 95-key keyboard with pointing device connects via a cable to the keyboard port on the VX5. Additional Windows keys (the Windows logo key and the Application key) and an integrated pointing device are provided for ease of use with Windows operating systems.



Figure 2-27 The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard

Key Maps

The 95-key keyboard supports all 104 keyboard functions (101 keyboard standard plus Windows keys) and includes an integrated pointing device and left and right mouse buttons. However, because the keyboard only has 95 keys, all functions are not visible (or printed on the keyboard). Therefore the VX5 keyboard supports what is called hidden keys -- keys that are accessible but not visible on the keyboard.

As with a standard keyboard, many keys are found in the Alphanumeric section as well as on the Numeric keypad (i.e. the 1 key is found on the numeric keypad and above the alpha characters on standard keyboards). However these keys send distinctly different scan codes when the keys are pressed. The hidden keys supported by the VX5 are listed in Appendix A, "Key Maps".

Note: The 95-key keyboard does not have a 2^{nd} key function.

NumLock and the VX5

For the 95-key keyboard, the NumLock key and the numeric keys are backlit **green** when NumLock is off. When NumLock is on, the backlight for the NumLock key and the numeric keys is **amber**.

CapsLock, Scroll Lock and the VX5

For the 95-key keyboard, the CapsLock key is backlit **green** when CapsLock is off. When CapsLock is on, the backlight for the CapsLock key is **amber**.

The Scroll Lock key is backlit **green** when Scroll Lock is off. When Scroll Lock is on, the backlight for the Scroll Lock key is **amber**.

The default values for CapsLock and Scroll Lock are Off.

Keyboard Backlight



The 95-key keyboard backlights each key with an LED. The keyboard backlight is manually controlled using the "backlight" key in the upper right hand corner of the keyboard. Pressing the backlight key cycles the keyboard backlight through the levels of backlight intensity:

- Off
- Maximum intensity
- Medium intensity
- Low intensity.

The 60-key QWERTY Keyboard

The 60-key keyboard has 101 keyboard functions, including a numeric keyboard pad. Please refer to Appendix A, "Key Maps", for keypress combinations.



Figure 2-28 The 60-key QWERTY Keyboard

Note: With the 60-key keyboard, the touchscreen MUST BE configured to recognize holding the <Ctrl> key then touching the screen as a right click. Please refer to "Configuring Right Click on the Touchscreen" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration" for more details.

IBM 3270 Keypad Overlay



Figure 2-29 IBM 3270 Specific Keypad

The 60-key keypad is available with an IBM 3270 overlay designed to allow the user to enter terminal emulator commands when running LXE's RFTerm[®] program.

IBM 5250 Keypad Overlay



Figure 2-30 IBM 5250 Specific Keypad

The 60-key keypad is available with an IBM 5250 overlay designed to allow the user to enter terminal emulator commands when running LXE's RFTerm[®] program.

Key Maps

The 60-key keyboard supports all 101 keyboard functions. However, because the keyboard only has 60 keys, all functions are not visible (or printed on the keyboard). Therefore the VX5 keyboard supports what is called hidden keys -- keys that are accessible but not visible on the keyboard.

On standard keyboards many keys are found in the Alphanumeric section as well as on the Numeric keypad (i.e. the 1 key is found on the numeric keypad and above the alpha characters on standard keyboards). However these keys send distinctly different scan codes when the keys are pressed. The default codes for the VX5 number keys correspond to the numeric keypad on standard keyboards. In order to duplicate the codes sent when the alphanumeric key is pressed, the hidden keystroke must be used.

The hidden keys supported by the VX5 are listed in Appendix A, "Key Maps".

Unused Key Functions

There are several key functions on the 60-key keyboard that are not used on the VX5. These include:

- <2nd> <F3> The Resume/Suspend function is not used as Microsoft Windows controls all power management modes.
- <2nd> <F4> and <2nd> <F5> The Display Brightness functions are not used as the display brightness is adjusted by the buttons on the VX5 control panel.
- <2nd> <F6> and <2nd> <F7> The Contrast functions are not used as the contrast is not adjustable on the TFT display on the VX5.
- <2nd> <F8> and <2nd> <F9> The Volume control keys are not used as volume is adjusted via the Microsoft Windows Volume icon in the System Tray.
- <2nd> <F10> Please see "Keyboard Backlight" later in this section for details on toggling the keyboard backlight.

NumLock and the VX5

The 60-key keyboard does not have a NumLock indicator or key. NumLock can be toggled On or Off using the $<2^{nd}$ < SHIFT> <F10> keypress sequence.

Keyboard Backlight

The LXE keyboard keys are backlit with LEDs. The backlight is manually controlled using the $<2^{nd}> + <CTRL> + <F10>$ keypress sequence.

Keyboard LEDs

The VX5 keyboard has three (2) LED indicators.



Figure 2-31 Keyboard LEDs

CAPS LED

This LED indicates the state of the keyboard CapsLock mode. If CapsLock is enabled this LED is illuminated green. When CapsLock is off, the LED is dark.



Figure 2-32 The CapsLock Key

Press $<2^{nd}>$ then <F1> to toggle CapsLock On and Off.

The default value of CapsLock is "Off".

Secondary Keys LED

The VMT keyboard is equipped with several secondary keys. These keys are identified by the superscripted text found on the keyboard keys. The secondary keys are accessible by using two (2) keystrokes: the $<2^{nd}>$ key followed by the superscripted key.



Figure 2-33 The Secondary Key

Once the $<2^{nd}>$ state is enabled (by pressing the $<2^{nd}>$ key) the Secondary Mode LED is illuminated and the $<2^{nd}>$ state is enabled until another key is pressed. The $<2^{nd}>$ key is toggled on with a $<2^{nd}>$ keypress and then immediately off with another $<2^{nd}>$ keypress.

For example:

Press <2nd> and <F1> to turn CapsLock on and off.

Press $<2^{nd}>$ and $<\uparrow>$ to initiate the PgUp command.

Press $<2^{nd}>$ and <Q> to type the "!" key.

Press <2nd> and <BkSp> to enter the Insert (Ins) mode.

Control Keys

The VMT keyboard has several control keys. Because of the construction of the VX5 and the Microsoft Windows operating system, many of the Control Keys are not used on the VX5.

Note: The 2^{nd} functions of the $\langle F4 \rangle$ and $\langle F5 \rangle$ keys are not used as the display brightness is adjusted via the buttons on the control panel.

The 2^{nd} functions of the $\langle F6 \rangle$, and $\langle F7 \rangle$ keys are not used as the VX5 has TFT LCD screen with no provision for contrast adjustments.

The 2^{nd} functions of the $\langle F8 \rangle$ and $\langle F9 \rangle$ keys are not used as the sound volume on the VX5 is controlled with the Sound icon in the Microsoft Windows System Tray.

The <F10> key is used to toggle the backlight as part of the keypress sequence $<2^{nd}> + <CTRL> + <F10>$. This key sequence immediately toggles the status of the keyboard backlight. Pressing $<2^{nd}> + <F10>$ has no effect on the keyboard backlight.



Figure 2-34 The VMT Keyboard Display Controls

General Windows Keyboard Shortcuts

Use the keyboard shortcuts in the chart below to navigate with any VX5 keyboard. These are standard keyboard shortcuts for Windows applications.

Press these keys	То
CTRL + C	Сору
CTRL + X	Cut
CTRL + V	Paste
CTRL + Z	Undo
DELETE	Delete
SHIFT with any of the arrow keys	Select more than one item in a window or on the desktop, or select text within a document.
CTRL+A	Select all.
ALT+ESC	Cycle through items in the order they were opened.
CTRL+ESC	Display the Start menu.
ALT+Underlined letter in a menu name	Display the corresponding menu.
Underlined letter in a command name on an open menu	Carry out the corresponding command.
ESC	Cancel the current task.

The touchscreen provides equivalent functionality to a mouse:

- A touch on the touchscreen is equivalent to a left mouse click.
- Many items can be moved by the "drag and drop" method, touching the desired item, moving the stylus across the screen and releasing the stylus in the desired location.
- A double stylus tap is equivalent to a double click.
- Right click is accomplished via the <Ctrl> key, either as pressing of the <Ctrl> key followed by a screen touch or holding the <Ctrl> key down flowed by a screen touch. Please refer to "Configuring Right Click on the Touchscreen" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration". Note that the 60-key keyboard only supports the holding the <Ctrl> key option.

PS/2 Keyboard/Mouse

A standard PS/2 keyboard and mouse can be attached to the VX5 using the appropriate dongle cable. The dongle cable attaches to the VX5 and provides two PS/2 connectors, one labeled "Keyboard" and one labeled "Mouse". Please refer to documentation provided with the PS/2 keyboard and mouse for more information on their operation.

Virtual Keyboard

The optional My-T-Soft[®] software provides a virtual keyboard on the touchscreen. To start the virtual keyboard, click on the My-T-Soft icon on the desktop or select **Start | Programs | My-T-Soft | My-T-Soft | My-T-Soft.**

The virtual keyboard provides several configuration options, including:

- Keyboard size
- QWERTY vs. ABCD
- Standard 101 key format vs. Windows 104 key format

For more information on configuring the virtual keyboard, click on **Start | Programs | My-T-Soft** | **My-T-Soft Setup**.

Esc		F1	F	2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	F	9 F1	0 F11	L F12	Prt	Sen	Pau	Ca	ap N	um S			Kybd	Help
	1	2		3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	_	=	Ļ	Ins	Hme	Рир	Num	1	Ŧ	-		Edit	Info
Tab	9	l u	Ī	е	г	t	ч	U	i	0	Р	C	J		Del	End	Pdn	7	8	9	+	284 P 8-007 807-0	Num	Win
Caps	a	1 9	5	Ь	f	g	h	j	k	1	;	1	En	ter				4	5	6		200 172 172 172 172 172 172 172 172 172 172	Mag	Nacro
Shi	ift	z	Τ	×	С	v	Ь	n	m			1	Shift			1		1	2	3	_		SzUp	Calc
Ctrl		A)	lt		Ň	ЦĿ	j-"Li			մԴե	;	Alt		Ctrl	+	Ļ	+	E	3	1			SzDn	Exit

Figure 2-35 Virtual Keyboard, Typical Configuration

Virtual keyboards display the actual character the keypress outputs. For example, pressing the <Shift> key on the virtual keyboard toggles the characters displayed on the keys between upper and lower case.

Note: When the virtual keyboard is displayed, the physical keyboard is still active, if attached. Therefore it is possible to input data from both keyboards.

The **Display**

The VX5 Display is a thin-film transistor display capable of supporting SVGA graphics modes. Display size is 800×600 pixels. The display covering is designed to resist stains. The touch screen allows signature capture and touch input.

The display supports screen blanking to eliminate driver distraction when the vehicle is in motion. Please see "Technical Specifications – Screen Blanking Cable" earlier in this chapter and "Screen Blanking Service" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration" for details.

Cleaning the Display

Keep fingers and rough or sharp objects away from the display. If the glass becomes soiled or smudged, clean only with a standard household cleaner such as Windex® without vinegar or use Isopropyl Alcohol. Do not use paper towels or harsh-chemical-based cleaning fluids since they may result in damage to the glass surface. Use a clean, damp, lint-free cloth. Do not scrub optical surfaces. If possible, clean only those areas which are soiled. Lint/particulates can be removed with clean, filtered canned air.

Touchscreen

The touch screen is a Resistive Panel with a scratch resistant finish that can detect touches by a stylus, and translate them into computer commands. In effect, it simulates a computer mouse. Only Delrin or plastic styluses should be used.

Note: Always use the point of the stylus for tapping or making strokes on the display. Never use an actual pen, pencil or sharp object to write on the touch screen.

An extra or replacement stylus may be ordered from LXE. See the "Accessories" section for the stylus part number.

Please refer to Chapter 3, "System Configuration" for more information on:

- Calibrating the touchscreen
- Disabling the touchscreen.

Install/Remove Touchscreen Protective Film

LXE offers a replaceable touchscreen protective film to protect the touchscreen when the VX5 is used in an abrasive environment.

How To Install Touchscreen Protective Film

- 1. Clean the touchscreen and protective film with a standard household cleaner such as Windex[®] without vinegar or use Isopropyl Alcohol. Do not use paper towels or harsh-chemical-based cleaning fluids since they may result in damage to the glass surface. Use a clean, damp, lint-free cloth. Do not scrub optical surfaces. If possible, clean only those areas which are soiled. Lint/particulates can be removed with clean, filtered canned air.
- 2. Center the protective film over the touchscreen. The anti-glare side **must be facing outward**. Do not cut or trim the protective film.
- 3. The protective film is approximately 1/10" (2.54mm) larger than the touchscreen at the centers of the edges.
- 4. Slide the protective film so that the one of the edges of the film can be slid between the touchscreen and display housing when the protective film is re-centered on the touchscreen. Repeat for the other three edges, ensuring the protective film is centered over the touchscreen when finished.

When necessary, the film can be cleaned with Windex or an equivalent cleaner as described above.

How to Remove Touchscreen Protective Film

The protective film can be removed by sliding the film in one direction until the edge clears. Lift up on the edge of the film so it does not slide between the touchscreen and housing when slid back. Repeat until all edges are free and remove the protective film.

Factory Default Settings

Boot Sequence (devices searched in this order)	Removable Devices (i.e. USB floppy drive), Hard Drive, CD-ROM Drive, Network Boot (i.e. PXE)
Legacy Floppy (A and B)	Disabled
Primary and Secondary Master and Slave drives	Auto
Display POST Messages	Disabled
Show Summary Screen	Disabled
Power Supply	ATX
Power Savings	Disabled
Onboard LAN RPL BIOS	Disabled

For more information on the default settings, please refer to Chapter 3, "System Configuration".

PCMCIA/CardBus and ATA Slots

The VX5 has two PCMCIA/CardBus slots and one ATA slot. The PCMCIA slots are stacked on top of each other and located on the right hand side of the opening. The ATA is located on the left hand side of the opening.

The PCMCIA slots support the Personal Computer Memory Card International Association (PCMCIA) 2.1 standards. The upper slot is designated as Slot 0 and the lower slot is designated as Slot 1.

Slot 0 accepts Type I or II PCMCIA cards. If a radio card is used, it must be installed in Slot 0 to prevent damage to the internal radio cables. LXE supports only Type II 2.4GHz Spread Spectrum radios.

Slot 1 accepts Type I, II or III PCMCIA cards. A Type III card can be used only when no card is installed in Slot 0.

The left slot is used for ATA memory cards, either PCMCIA or Compact Flash (CF) format via a PCMCIA adapter. The left slot is connected to the secondary IDE interface.



PCMCIA Slots

Slot 0 and 1 PCMCIA Card Management is handled by Microsoft Windows. The PCMCIA cards are Plug and Play devices and can be "hot swapped". For more details, refer to the Windows help screens or refer to the documentation delivered with the PCMCIA card.

PCMCIA Pinout

Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal
1	GND	35	12V RF POWER
2	D3	36	-CDI
3	D4	37	D11
4	D5	38	D12
5	D6	39	D13
6	D7	40	D14
7	-CE1	41	D15
8	A10	42	-CE2
9	-OE	43	n.c. or VS1#
10	A11	44	-IORD
11	A9	45	-IOWR
12	A8	46	A17
13	A13	47	A18
14	A14	48	A19
15	-WE	49	A20
16	RDY/-IREQ	50	A21
17	SLOT_VCC	51	SLOT_VCC
18	SLOT-VPP	52	SLOT_VPP
19	A16	53	A22
20	A15	54	A23
21	A12	55	A24
22	A7	56	A25
23	A6	57	n.c. or VS2#
24	A5	58	RESET
25	A4	59	-WAIT
26	A3	60	-INPACK
27	A2	61	-REG
28	Al	62	BVD2/-SPKR
29	A0	63	BDV1/-STSCHG
30	D0	64	D8
31	D1	65	D9
32	D2	66	D10
33	WP/AIOIS16	67	-CD2
34	GND	68	GND

Install PCMCIA Cards

Equipment Needed: Phillips No. 1 screwdriver and a Torque wrench capable of measuring to 9 ± 1 inch pounds (1.016 \pm .11 N/m).

Note: The example below details installing a 2.4GHz radio card. Installation of other *PCMCIA* cards is similar, except there is no antenna.

Install the 2.4GHz PCMCIA Radio

	Caution	The LXE Model VX5 Vehicle Mount Computer is specifically for use with LXE Model Numbers 4830, 6726 and 6816 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA radios. Substitution of other PCMCIA radios will void the FCC, Industry Canada and other international radio certifications for the Model VX5 Vehicle Mount Computer and is strictly prohibited.
--	---------	--

- 1. Turn the VX5 off and detach the power cable.
- 2. Loosen the three (3) Phillips head screws securing the access panel cover so the cover can be removed. The screws are a captive part of the cover and cannot be removed.

Partially insert the 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA Radio into Slot 0 (the upper right slot).



Slot 0 MUST BE used for the radio card. Installing a radio card in Slot 1 can result in pinching or other damage to the internal antenna cable.



Figure 2-37 Inserting the 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA Radio

Note: The tethered access panel cover is not shown in the illustration above.

3. Before completely inserting the 2.4GHz Radio, connect the Antenna Cable to the 2.4GHz Radio, using the port(s) indicated below:

Summit CF Radio Card

The Summit CF radio is installed on a PCMCIA adapter. Hold the radio card with the antenna ports facing down. Connect the antenna cable(s) as follows:

- Summit radio with single antenna Connect antenna cable to Main port. Auxiliary port is not used.
- Summit radio with dual antennas Connect antenna cables to both Main and Auxiliary ports.



Figure 2-38 Summit Antenna Cable Connections

Cisco Radio Card

- Cisco radio with single antenna Connect antenna cable to right port, as shown below.
- Cisco radio with dual antennas Connect antenna cables to both ports.



Figure 2-39 Cisco Antenna Cable Connections

Symbol 11Mb Radio Card

- Symbol 11Mb radio with single antenna Connect antenna cable to left port, as shown below.
- Symbol 11Mb radio with dual antennas Connect antenna cables to both ports.



Figure 2-40 Symbol 11Mb Antenna Cable Connections

- 4. Now complete the insertion of the 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA Radio into Slot 0. Non-radio cards can be inserted into either Slot 0 or Slot 1.
 - Note: When this process is complete, reattach the access cover screws using a torque wrench capable of measuring to 9 ± 1 inch pounds $(1.016\pm.11 \text{ N/m})$. The screws must be fastened to 9 inch pounds each. The screws require a Phillips size 1 driver head.
- 5. Re-connect the power cord/cable and turn the VX5 on.

ATA Slot

The ATA slot is connected to the secondary IDE controller. The slot accepts a PCMCIA card or a compact flash card via a PCMCIA adapter. The VX5 must be powered down before inserting or removing an ATA card.

Only ATA memory cards may be used in these slots. No other types of PCMCIA or compact flash cards may be used in the ATA slots. The ATA slots do not provide for "hot swapping" of cards.

Install an ATA Card

- 1. Turn the VX5 off and detach the power cable.
- 2. Loosen the three (3) Phillips head screws securing the access panel cover so the cover can be removed. The screws are a captive part of the cover and cannot be removed.
- 3. Insert the card into the ATA slot. This slot accepts an ATA PCMCIA card or a compact flash ATA card in a PCMCIA adapter.



Figure 2-41 Inserting the ATA Card

- *Note:* The tethered access panel cover is not shown in the illustration above.
- Note: When this process is complete, reattach the access cover screws using a torque wrench capable of measuring to 9 ± 1 inch pounds $(1.016\pm 11 \text{ N/m})$. The screws must be fastened to 9 inch pounds each. The screws require a Phillips size 1 driver head.
- 4. Re-connect the power cord/cable and turn the VX5 on.
- 5. Review the BIOS settings to ensure the ATA card is recognized as the secondary drive.

Power Supply

AC to DC power input for the VX5 is delivered via an optional external power supply. See "External Power Supply".

Vehicle power input for the VX5 is 12V to 80V DC nominal and is accepted without the need to perform any manual operation within the VX5. See "Vehicle 12-80VDC Direct Connection." An optional uninterruptible power supply (UPS) battery can be used with the vehicle DC power supply.

Power input is fused for protection and the fuse is externally accessible on the VX5.



In North America, this unit is intended for use with a UL Listed ITE power supply with output rated 12 - 80 VDC, minimum 75 W. Outside North America, this unit is intended for use with an IEC certified ITE power supply with output rated 12 - 80 VDC, minimum 75 W.

The external power supply may be connected to either a 120V, 60Hz supply or, outside North America, to a 230V, 50Hz supply, using the appropriate detachable cordset. In all cases, connect the external AC supply to a properly grounded source of supply provided with maximum 15 Amp overcurrent protection (10 Amp for 230V circuits).

Note: Instructions for using this configuration are contained in "VX5 User's Guide" section titled "Installation".

Specifications

Feature	Specification					
Dimensions	3.40" x 5.87" x 2.00"					
Weight	<3.0 pounds					
Input Power Switch	None					
Power "ON" Indicator	None					
Input Fusing	None					
Input Voltage	90VAC min - 264VAC max					
Input Frequency	47 - 63 Hz					
Input Surge Current	50 Amps max @ 264VAC input					
Input Connector	Standard IEC input power cord (included with US units only)					
Output Connector	3 pin female connector					
Output Voltage	+24VDC					
Output Voltage Tolerance	+/- 8%, measured at the end of the output power cable					
Output Current	0 Amps min, 1.87 Amps max					
Safety and Emissions Compliance	FCC, Part 15, Radio Frequency Devices, Class B.					
	EN 55022					
	UL1950 and IEC 950					

Environmental Specifications

The AC to DC adapter will withstand the following environmental characteristics:

Feature	Specification
Operating Temperature	see VX5 Environmental Specifications
Storage Temperature	see VX5 Environmental Specifications
Humidity	Operates in a relative humidity of: 5 – 95% (non-condensing)
ESD Immunity	Per IEC 801-1

Vehicle 12-80VDC Direct Connection

Note: Instructions for using this configuration are contained in "VX5 User's Guide" section titled "Installation".



- To Vehicle Battery
 To Vehicle Mounted Device or UPS Battery
- 3. White (DC+)

Pack

- 4. Black (DC-)
- 5. Green (GND)
- 6. 12 80 VDC

Figure 2-43 Direct Vehicle Power Connection Cable (12 Ft.)



Note: Correct electrical polarity is required for safe and proper installation. Connecting the cable to the VX5 with the polarity reversed will cause the VX5's fuse to be blown. See the following table for wire color-coding specifics.

Wiring color codes for LXE supplied DC input power cabling:

Vehicle Supply		Wire Color
+12 - 80VDC	(DC +)	White
Return	(DC -)	Black
Vehicle Chassis	(GND)	Green

Figure 2-45 Vehicle Connection Wiring Color Codes
VX5 Input Power Specifications

Feature	Specification
DC Input Voltage	12 - 80 VDC
Input Current	3.5 Amps
Input Fuse	10A Time Delay
Input Power Switch	SPST 6 Amp 125VDC

Power Adapter Cable

LXE offers an adapter cable (part no. 9000A077CBLPWRADPTR) to adapt certain VX1, VX2 or VX4 DC power supplies to the VX5. Please read and follow all cautions in the "VX5 User's Guide" to determine if your present power supply can be used with the VX5.



Figure 2-46 Power Adapter Cable, VX1/2/4 to VX5

Caution:	For use only with VX1/2/4 DC power cables with yellow colored cable containing 18AWG wires. Do not use this cable with VX1/2/4 DC power cables with gray colored cable containing 22AWG wires. These power cables must be replaced with a VX5/6/7 power cable.
Caution:	When a DC power cable that is eight feet or longer is in a 12V application, there may be an excessive voltage drop over the longer cable. If this occurs, a new power cable is required.
Caution:	Do not use this adapter with AC power supplies originally designed for the 1380, 1390, VX1, VX2 or VX4. These power supplies do not have sufficient power for the VX5.

CMOS Battery

The LXE VX5 has a permanent 190 mAh Lithium battery installed to maintain time, date and CMOS setup information. The lithium battery is not user serviceable and should last five years with normal use before it requires replacement.

Note: This battery should only be changed by authorized service personnel.

Fuse

The VX5 uses a 100V, 10A time delay (slow blow), high current interrupting rating fuse that is externally accessible and user replaceable. Should it need replacement, replace with same size, rating and type of fuse – Littlefuse 0234010 or Optifuse MSC-10A (5x20mm).



Figure 2-47 Fuse Replacement



Fuse has voltage on it even when power is off. Always disconnect input power before changing fuse.

Chapter 3 System Configuration

Introduction

Like any personal computer, there are many aspects to the setup and configuration of the VX5. Much of the setup and configuration of the VX5 is dependent upon the optional features (both hardware and software) installed on the computer. Since the VX5 uses the Microsoft Windows Plug and Play operating system, much of the hardware setup is automatic. The examples found in this chapter are to be used as samples only; the configuration of your specific computer may vary. The following sections provide a general reference for the configuration of the VX5 and its optional features.



Please refer to commercially available Microsoft Windows user guides or to Windows on-line Help application for more information on Windows' options for system configuration.

BIOS Setup

LXE installs Microsoft Windows on the VX5 before shipping. The default BIOS parameters are configured at that time. In most cases, it is unnecessary to modify the BIOS parameters.

Generally, it is only necessary to enter the BIOS setup to change the boot order of the drives.

Note: Some BIOS parameters described in this section may not be available on all VX5's.



Note: Make sure there is an uninterrupted power supply connected to the VX5 before accessing BIOS Setup.

Windows Management Instrumentation

VX5 BIOS includes support for Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI). The information displayed by selecting **Programs** | **Accessories** | **System Tools** | **System Information** from the Windows Start Menu identifies the System Manufacturer as "LXE Inc." and the System Model as "VX5".

Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) is a component of the Microsoft Windows operating system and is the Microsoft implementation of Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM). WBEM is an industry initiative to develop a standard technology for accessing management information in an enterprise environment. WMI uses the Common Information Model (CIM) industry standard to represent systems, applications, networks, devices, and other managed components. You can use WMI to automate administrative tasks in an enterprise environment.

Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) is a component of the Microsoft Windows operating system that provides management information and control in an enterprise environment. By using industry standards, managers can use WMI to query and set information on desktop systems, applications, networks, and other enterprise components. Developers can use WMI to create event monitoring applications that alert users when important incidents occur.

In order to get specific system attributes to return valid data is very simple. The values are pulled from the SMBIOS data structure. The following attributes are populated with LXE specific information:

Within the Win32_ComputerSystemProduct class

Caption = "Computer System Product" Description = "Computer System Product" IdentifyingNumber = this field is populated by the Kontron Serial number, if available. If not available, this field contains a 'serial number not available message'. Name = "VX5" [This is equivalent to the Model Number] Vendor = LXE Inc [This is equivalent to the Make Number]

Within the Win32_SystemEnclosure

ChassisTypes = 8 (Note that some applications may display "portable", which is equivalent to the value 8)

Manufacturer = LXE Inc

Identifying BIOS Revision

The VX5 is available with two different BIOS revisions. The appropriate BIOS is determined by the VX5's internal components and is loaded on the VX5 during manufacture. The BIOS should not be reflashed with a different version.

The BIOS is identified by one of the following strings:

- MOD8R901
- LXE0R100

The string is displayed during the boot process as:

Kontron(R) BIOS Version <xxxxxxx>

where xxxxxxx is equal to one of the values above.

Additionally, the LXE0R100 BIOS is identified on the BIOS screens with "LXE0" displayed in the upper left corner of the BIOS screen and "R100" displayed in the upper right. The MOD8R901 BIOS does not have the version displayed on the BIOS screens.

Unless otherwise noted, BIOS parameters in the following sections are present in both BIOS revisions.

Accessing the BIOS Setup

When you turn the VX5 on, the unit starts to boot. Watch the bootup sequence and when the following is displayed:

Press F2 to Enter Setup

Press the [F2] key.

Note: The "Press F2 to Enter Setup" message may be disabled in the BIOS. The F2 key still has the same function when the display of the message is disabled.

BIOS Setup has six menus: Main, Advanced, Security, Power, Boot and Exit.

Using the Keypad

The set of keypad commands used to select menu items and parameters, as well as modify parameter values is as follows:

Action	Keypress
Exit a menu	Esc
Activate Help Screen	F1
Modify parameter value	Space key or alpha-numeric key
Move to next parameter	Enter or Arrow Key
Move from menu to menu	Arrow key

Note: Refer to Appendix A "Key Maps" for other key press sequences.

BIOS Setup Default Values by Option

BIOS Revision LXE0R100

Menu Option	Menu / Section	Default Value
Boot	Boot Device Priority	1: IDE 0 (hard drive), 2: IDE 1, 3: IDE 2, 4: IDE 3, 5: IDE CD, 6: USB KEY, 7: USB CDROM, 8: (in this order)
Onboard LAN RPL ROM	Boot	Disabled
Power Savings	Power	Disabled
Power Supply	Power	ATX
Rpt Delay	Advanced / Keyboard	1/2 sec
Rpt Rate	Advanced / Keyboard	30 /sec
Dark Boot	Boot	Disabled (displays diagnostic screen during boot)
Summary	Boot	Disabled

BIOS Revision MOD8R901

Menu Option	Menu / Section	Default Value
Boot	Boot Device Priority	Removable Devices (i.e. USB floppy drive), Hard Drive, CD-ROM drive, Network boot (i.e. PXE) in this order
Onboard LAN RPL ROM	Boot	Disabled
Power Savings	Power	Disabled
Power Supply	Power	ATX
Rpt Delay	Advanced / Keyboard	1/2 sec
Rpt Rate	Advanced / Keyboard	30 /sec
Dark Boot	Boot	Disabled (displays diagnostic screen during boot)
Summary	Boot	Disabled

Notes:

- Settings are saved temporarily as each parameter activity screen is closed. Changes are saved to CMOS RAM when Exit With Save is selected and the BIOS setup program closes.
- Changed parameter values take effect when the VX5 reboots upon exiting BIOS Setup. If the VX5 does not automatically reboot upon exit, please reboot the VX5.
- Many items, like Power Savings and Keyboard repeat rate/delay may be configured via the Microsoft Windows Control panel.

Main Menu Options

To edit parameters, use the up and down arrow key to move from parameter to parameter.

Use the space key or an alpha-numeric key to modify a parameter value.

Press F1 to activate the help screen. Then use the panning function to move around the help screen. Press ESC to close the help screen.

Use the left and right arrow keys to move from menu to menu.

Press the ESC key or key sequence to go directly to the Exit Menu.

When changes have been made, press an arrow key to go to another parameter or menu or press ESC to go to the Exit Menu.

Menu Option	Default Value
System Time	
System Date	
Legacy Diskette (A: and B:)	Disabled
Primary Master	Auto
Primary Slave	Auto
Secondary Master	Auto
Secondary Slave	Auto
Memory Shadow	
Memory Cache	
System Memory	640KB
Extended Memory	252928KB
BIOS Date (LXE0R100 only)	09/14/06

Settings are saved temporarily as each parameter activity screen is closed. Changes are saved to CMOS RAM when "Save and Exit" is selected and the BIOS Setup program closes.

Changed and saved parameter values take effect after the VX5 is rebooted.

Note: The secondary drive is either an ATA Compact Flash or ATA PCMCIA card. Please refer to "ATA Secondary Drive" later in this chapter for more information.

Legacy Diskette (A and B)

This option is used to indicate if a floppy disk drive is attached to the VX5. The VX5 does not have a provision for a standard floppy drive; however, a USB floppy may be attached to the USB interface cable.

```
Values:
Disabled No floppy drive present.
360KB 5¼" The option chosen will depend
1.2MB 5¼" on the drive attached. Most
720KB 3½" common are 1.44MB 3½" drives.
1.44/125MB 3½"
2.88MB 3½"
Default: Disabled
```

Primary and Secondary Master and Slave Drives

Use this option to indicate the type of disk drive installed in the VX5.

Values:	
Auto	Auto-detects the hard drive installed, if any.
User	User enters parameters of the installed hard drive.
1-39	Select hard drive from pre-determined types.
CD-ROM	A CD-ROM is installed here.
ATAPI Removable	A removable disk drive is installed.
Default: Aut	0

Note: The secondary drive is the enabled ATA slot on the side of the VX5. This drive may be either a PCMCIA or Compact Flash (via PCMCIA adapter) ATA drive. Please see "ATA Secondary Drive" later in this chapter for more details.

Advanced Menu Options

The Advanced Menu contains several sections – Advanced Chipset Control, PCI Configuration, Keyboard Features, and I/O Device Configuration.

To edit parameters, use the up and down arrow key to move from parameter to parameter.

Use the space key or an alpha-numeric key to modify a parameter value.

Press F1 to activate the help screen then use the arrow keys to scroll through the help screen. Press ESC to close the help screen.

Use the left and right arrow keys to move from menu to menu.

Press the ESC key or key sequence to go directly to the Exit Menu.

Menu Option	Default Value
Advanced Chipset Control	
PNP OS Installed	No
Reset Configuration Data	No
Secured Setup Configuration	Yes
PCI Configuration	
PS/2 Mouse	Auto Detect
Keyboard Features	
I/O Device Configuration	
Hardware Monitor	
Large Disk Access Mode	DOS
Halt On Errors	Yes

Settings are saved temporarily as each parameter activity screen is closed. Changes are saved to CMOS RAM when "Save and Exit" is selected and the BIOS Setup program closes.

Changed and saved parameter values take effect after the VX5 is rebooted.

Advanced Chipset Control

Parameters in this menu have been selected for best performance from your VX5. Changes are not recommended.

PCI Configuration

Parameters in this menu have been selected for best performance from your VX5. Changes are not recommended.

Keyboard Features

NumLock

Note: Some VX5 keyboards do not have a NumLock indicator or key. For these keyboards, NumLock may be toggled using the $\langle 2^{nd} \rangle \langle SHIFT \rangle \langle F10 \rangle$ keypress sequence.

Use this option to set NumLock at boot time. When NumLock is On, the keypad is locked in numeric mode. When NumLock is Off the numeric keys are inoperable.

Whether NumLock at Boot is Off or On, no LED is illuminated on the VX5.

Values:	Auto, On,	Off
Default:	Auto	

Keyclick

Enables the click on a keypress.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Disabled	

I/O Device Configuration

Local Bus IDE Adapter

This parameter enables the onboard IDE adapter.

Available with BIOS revision LXE0R100 only.

Values:

Disabled	No PCI IDE device enabled.
Primary	Primary PCI IDE enabled.
Secondary	Secondary PCI IDE enabled.
Both	Both Primary and Secondary PCI IDE devices enabled.
Default:	Both

Serial Port (A and B)

These parameters determine if the integrated serial port is active.

Values:	
Disabled	Port is not active.
Enabled	User must define port by specifying base I/O address and interrupt.
Auto	BIOS or OS configured.
OS Cntrl	Controlled by OS
Default:	Auto

Note: To switch pin-9 of the port between RI and +5v, it is necessary to change jumpers on the system board. See "Serial Port Pin 9" later in this chapter.

Onboard LPT

These parameters determine if the integrated parallel port is active.

Values:	
Disabled	Port is not active.
Enabled	User must define port by specifying base I/O address and interrupt.
Auto	BIOS or OS configured.
OS Cntrl	Controlled by OS
Default:	Disabled

Note: There is no parallel port (LPT1) on a VX5. Disabling the LPT1 port allows IRQ7 to be used by other devices.

USB Port / USB Host Controller

These parameters determine if the USB port is active.

Available with BIOS revision MOD8R901 only.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Enabled	

Note: The USB adapter cable must be attached to the VX5 to use the USB port.

USB BIOS Legacy Support

Enables support for USB keyboard and mice.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Enabled	

Note: To boot from a USB floppy, USB BIOS Legacy Support must be enabled.

OnChip USB 2 device

Enables support for USB Ports 2 - 3.

Available with BIOS revision LXE0R100 only.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Enabled	

Onboard Legacy Audio

Enables support for legacy audio devices.

Available with BIOS revision LXE0R100 only.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Enabled	

Sound Blaster

Enables and configures the Sound Blaster device, only available when legacy audio devices are supported.

Available with BIOS revision LXE0R100 only.

Values: Enabled, Disabled Default: Enabled

When Enabled, The Base I/O address, Interrupt and 8-bit DMA channel must be specified.

MPU-401

Enables and configures the MPU-401 device, only available when legacy audio devices are supported.

Available with BIOS revision LXE0R100 only.

Values: Enabled, Disabled Default: Disabled

When Enabled, The MPU I/O address must be specified.

Security

This menu can be used to set security features as desired.

Power

BIOS power management is disabled in the VX5. Microsoft Windows handles all power management.

Boot

Floppy Check

This parameter determines if the floppy drive is verified on boot. Disabling provides a faster boot.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Disabled	

Summary Screen

This parameter determines if the summary screen should be displayed on bootup. Disabling provides a faster boot.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Disabled	

Quickboot Mode

This parameter determines if certain tests should be skipped during boot. Enabling provides a faster boot.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Enabled	

Dark Boot

This parameter prevents diagnostic output to the screen during boot.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Enabled	

Onboard LAN PXE ROM

Enables remote boot BIOS extensions for the onboard LAN controller (Ethernet port). PXE stands for Pre-eXecution Environment.

Available with BIOS revision LXE0R100 only.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Disabled	

Boot Device Priority

BIOS Revision LXE0R100

The bootable devices are listed in the order they are searched.

Boot Priority Order 1: IDE 0 (hard drive) 2: IDE 1 3: IDE 2 4: IDE 3 5: IDE CD 6: USB KEY 7: USB CDROM 8: Excluded From Boot Order **USB FDC** USB HDD USB ZIP USB LS120 PCI BEV PCI SCSI Bootable Add-in Cards Legacy Network Card

This is the default boot order delivered with your VX5. Valid functions are:

- Highlight a device and press <+> to move it up the list of devices.
- Highlight a device and press <-> to move it down the list of devices.
- Highlight a device in the Excluded list and press <X> to enable it and place it in the Boot Priority list.
- Highlight a device in the Boot Priority list and press <X> to enable it and place it in the Excluded list.

BIOS Revision MOD8R901

The bootable devices are listed in the order they are searched.

Removable Devices + Hard Drive ATAPI CD-ROM Drive Network Boot

Any item listed with a "+" contains an expandable list of devices. Highlight the item and press the <Enter> key to expand the list.

```
Removable Devices

- Hard Drive

Secondary Master

Bootable Add-In Cards

Primary Master

ATAPI CD-ROM Drive

Network Boot
```

This is the default boot order delivered with your VX5. Valid functions are:

- Highlight a device and press <+> to move it up the list of devices.
- Highlight a device and press <-> to move it down the list of devices.
- <Enter> expands an item with a "+" and contracts an item with a "-".
- <2nd>+<Shift>+<1> disables or enables a device. Any disabled device is displayed with an "!".
- *Note:* Hard drives in the boot order listing may be identified by the manufacturer name. In those cases, the (PM) or (SM) listed after the drive name identifies the drive as Primary Master or Secondary Master.

Onboard LAN RPL ROM

Enables remote boot BIOS extensions for the onboard LAN controller (Ethernet port). RPL stands for Remote Program Load.

Available with BIOS Revision MOD8R901 only.

Values:	Enabled,	Disabled
Default:	Disabled	

Exit Menu Options

To edit parameters, use the up and down arrow key to move from parameter to parameter.

Press F1 to activate the help screen then use the panning function to move around the help screen. Press ESC to close the help screen.

Use the left and right arrow keys to move from menu to menu.

Press the ESC key or key sequence to go directly to the Exit Menu.

As changes are made to Setup values, the values can be saved or discarded. The next time the VX5 is turned on or rebooted, the saved values take effect.

Exit Saving Changes

Use this option to immediately save current Setup settings to CMOS RAM and into the Flash Boot Device (FBD).

When "Save and Exit" is highlighted, press <Enter> to save. When the saving process is complete, the VX5 reboots with the current values.

Exit Discarding Changes

Use this option when any current changes made to Setup parameters are to be ignored. The parameters revert to their state when Setup was entered.

When this option is highlighted, press <Enter> and the boot process continues. The system reboots with unchanged values.

Load Setup Defaults

This option is used to reset the Setup values to the original, default values that were set at the factory, before suppliers or end users made changes.

The next time the VX5 is turned on or rebooted, those saved values are in effect. Save this change by selecting "Save and Exit."

Discard Changes

Use this option to immediately restore CMOS RAM and update the current Setup settings from the Flash Boot Device.

Save this change by selecting "Save and Exit."

Save Changes

Used to save BIOS Setup changes without rebooting. The changed parameters are in effect the next time the VX5 is powered on or rebooted.

Reboot by selecting either "Exit w/o Save" or "Save and Exit."

Serial Port Pin 9

Pin 9 of the serial ports may be configured to provide RI or +5V using DIP switches accessible by removing the access cover:

- Pin 9 must be set to +5V if an external serial scanner is to be attached. This is the default setting for COM1 and provides 400mA maximum.
- Pin 9 must be set to RI if a serial printer or PC cable is to be used with the port. This is the default setting for COM2.

Note: COM2 is labeled either "COM2" or "COM2/3".

Equipment Needed: Phillips No. 1 screwdriver, a Torque wrench capable of measuring to 9 ± 1 inch pounds (1.016 ± .11 N/m).

Note: Torquing tool is not supplied by LXE.

- 1. Turn the VX5 off and remove the power supply before opening the access cover located on the top of the VX5.
- 2. Loosen the three (3) Phillips screws securing the access cover so the cover can be removed. The screws are a captive part of the cover and cannot be removed.
- 3. Remove the access cover. The cover is tethered to the VX5 to prevent loss.



Figure 3-1 DIP Switch Location

Note: The tethered access panel cover is not shown in the illustration above.

- Refer to the legend above the DIP switches. There are two DIP switches, one for COM1 and one for COM2. When a DIP switch is in the Up position, the COM port pin 9 is configured for a scanner (+5V). When a DIP switch is in the Down position, the COM port pin 9 is configured for RI.
- 5. After setting the DIP switches to the desired position, reattach the access cover screws using a torque wrench capable of measuring 9±1 inch pounds (1.016±.11 N/m). The three screws must be fastened to 9 inch pounds each. The screws require a Phillips size 1 driver head.

VMT Keyboard Backlighting

95-key Keyboard

This LXE keyboard has keys that are backlit with LEDs. The backlight is manually controlled using the "backlight" key in the upper right hand corner of the keyboard. Pressing the backlight key cycles the backlight through the levels of backlight intensity:

- Off
- Maximum intensity
- Medium intensity
- Low intensity.

60-key Keyboard

This LXE keyboard has LEDs that illuminate the individual keys. The keyboard backlight may be toggled manually by pressing $\langle 2^{nd} \rangle + \langle CTRL \rangle + \langle F10 \rangle$. This key sequence immediately changes the state of the keyboard backlight as follows:

- Turns the backlight Off if it is currently On.
- Turns the backlight On if it is currently Off.

Microsoft Windows Setup and Configuration

Options for the VX5 include Windows 2000 Professional and Windows XP Professional preinstalled. If your VX5 was ordered with no Operating System, please see "VX5 Delivered with No OS" later in this chapter.

Note: The VX5 System Tools CD-ROM (LXE Part No. VX5A477DRIVERS) contains files that may be used during Microsoft Windows setup and Configuration. Please refer to the section detailing the contents of this CD later in this chapter.

Microsoft Windows License Agreement (First Boot)

- 1e
- If your VX5 is shipped with a Microsoft Windows operating system pre-installed, it is necessary to complete the Windows licensing/registration screens when starting the VX5 for the first time. To complete this information, you need the Microsoft Windows software/product key that was included with the VX5.
- Note: If you are installing a Microsoft Windows operating system on a VX5 delivered with no OS, you may be prompted for the Windows software or product key and registration information either during installation or upon first boot.

Microsoft Windows 2000

The Microsoft Windows software key is a 25 digit key included with the VX5.

The first screen prompts for the name (individual or corporation) to which Microsoft Windows is registered. After the information is entered, press or click on the "Next" button.

The second screen displays Microsoft's licensing agreement. Review the agreement and indicate if you wish to accept the agreement.

Note: If you do not accept the agreement, Microsoft Windows does not continue to load.

The next screen asks for the software key. Enter the key exactly as it is displayed on the decal.

Note: If you ordered multiple VX5's, a separate key code decal is included for each VX5. Each key code is to be used on only one VX5. Be sure to store the key codes in a safe place.

Pressing "Next" finishes the licensing/registration process.

As Microsoft Windows starts for the first time, you are asked to verify the time and time zone. Make any necessary changes and Windows finishes its setup and starts for the first time.

Microsoft Windows XP

When Microsoft Windows XP is started by the user for the first time (known as the "out of the box experience"), a series of questions is presented. The product key (printed on a decal attached to the VX5) must be entered. The series of prompts and responses allow the user to configure Microsoft Windows XP on the VX5 according to the user's needs.

During this process it is normal for the "New Hardware Wizard" window to appear. When the wizard appears and asks for the Ethernet device driver, select "OEMxxx.INF" (where xxx is a series of numbers, such as OEM123.INF) from the list of available drivers and click Next. When prompted, click Finish to complete the installation of the Ethernet device.

If you are installing a Summit radio, the wizard window may appear for the radio driver. If prompted to search Windows Update for the device driver, select "No, not this time" and click Next. Then click Next and Finish when prompted.

If you are installing a Symbol radio, the wizard window may appear for the radio driver. Click Next and then Finish when prompted.

Proceed with the remainder of the boot process.

Drive C Directory Structure

The drive C: directory structure is the same for all media types. Microsoft Windows is installed in the \Windows or \WINNT directory. The default directory depends on the version installed. In addition, Microsoft Windows creates other directories and several subdirectories. For more information on the directories Microsoft Windows uses, please refer to commercially available Windows reference guides.

Depending on the option ordered, drive C: may be:

- a 40 or 80 GB rotating drive
- a 2 or 4 GB flash drive
- a 2 or 4 GB PCMCIA card
- a user installed drive (a VX5 with the "no hard drive" option)

Please refer to the invoice or packing list if there are any questions about the configuration of your VX5.

ATTENTION: On a VX5 with a flash drive, powering off the VX5 before a write (to disk) function has completed, may result in the corruption of the flash drive.

Software Loaded on Drive C

The software loaded on the VX5 computer consists of:

- BIOS
- Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional
- device drivers
- radio software
- touchscreen software
- RFTerm[®] software.
- *Note:* If your VX5 was ordered with the no OS option, please refer to "VX5 with No OS", later in this chapter.

The software installed on the VX5 is summarized below.

Note: Due to the complex directory structure and System Registry under Microsoft Windows, software should not be removed manually. Instead use the Add/Remove Programs icon in the Windows Control Panel.

Microsoft Windows

Microsoft Windows is installed in the \Windows (or \WINNT) subdirectory, which is the Windows default. In addition, Windows places files in other directories and subdirectories during installation. For more information, please refer to commercially available Windows user guides.

Device Drivers

Device drivers are included for all installed hardware options, such as the display, touchscreen, radios, Ethernet port, etc. For more information on Microsoft Windows device drivers, please refer to commercially available Windows guides.

Radio Software

If a radio is ordered with a VX5, the VX5 is delivered with the radio software installed. Because the VX5 is uses a Microsoft Windows operating system, the radio installation includes Windows device drivers.

Touchscreen Software

Fujitsu Touch Panel software is installed for calibrating the VX5's touchscreen. Please see "Touch Screen Calibration" later in this chapter for more information.

RFTerm[®] Software

RFTerm allows users to connect to applications running on IBM 3270, AS/400 and VT hosts from an LXE Microsoft Windows based mobile computer over a wireless TCP/IP data network.

Microsoft Windows Configuration

After the system files are processed, Microsoft Windows begins to load. Windows maintains a System Registry and INI files. Standard Windows configuration options apply to the VX5. Configuration options are located in either the System Tray or the Control Panel:

- The System Tray contains icons for adjusting the time, date or volume level.
- The Control Panel contains icons for many other configuration options, such as Power Management, PC Cards, etc.
- The Control Panel icons are also used to add, delete or modify hardware installed on the VX5.



Please refer to Microsoft Windows help screens or commercially available Windows guides for more information on configuration options in Windows.

Touchscreen

Calibrating the Touchscreen

Although the touch screen is installed and calibrated at the factory, users may make adjustments to it by using the Fujitsu Touch Panel on the Microsoft Windows Programs menu. To calibrate the touchscreen, select Start | Programs | Fujitsu Touch Panel (USB) | Touch Screen Calibration Utility.



Figure 3-2 Touchscreen Calibration, Targets

The calibration utility displays a red cross on the screen. Touch the center of the cross with the stylus and hold for a few seconds. Release and repeat with the next cross. After all twelve locations have been touched, either press <Enter> or click the Calibration button.

	Hide Menu	Calibration Screen	Cursor OFF	Clear Screen	Cancel & Exit	Save & Exit
Use the stylu and exit or [H [Home] [Tab] [Space Bar] [Esc] [Enter]	is to check touch scro lome] to return to Cal :Calibration Screen :Cursor on/off :Clear Screen :Cancel & Exit :Save & Exit	een calibration i ibration Screen	in this test are	a. Press (Ente	er] to save set	tings

Figure 3-3 Touchscreen Calibration, Save and Exit

To save the new calibration settings, click on the Save & Exit button or press <Enter>. To discard the new calibration settings, click Cancel & Exit or press <Esc>.

Configuring Right Click on the Touchscreen

The Fujitsu Touch Panel configuration is accessed from the Programs section of the Microsoft Windows Start menu. Use this utility to configure the "right click" behavior of the touch screen.

Touch Panel Configuration -	V1.9L42 ? 🗙				
Hold [Ctrl] key down + Touch	the screen				
📥 + 🔭 =	Right 🗖 Use				
Press [Ctrl] Key, Touch the screen					
🛃 → 🔭 =	Right 🔽 Use				
Beep Setting					
	L Apply(<u>A</u>)				

Figure 3-4 Touch Panel Configuration

The touch screen right click behavior can be configured as followed:

- Holding the <Ctrl> key and then touching the screen if the first option is selected
- A screen touch after the <Ctrl> key is pressed if the second option is selected.
- *Note:* Because the <*Ctrl>* key is a "sticky key" on the 60-key keyboard, the first option must be used with this keyboard. Once the <*Ctrl>* key is pressed on the 60-key keyboard, the <*Ctrl>* key stays active (and every screen touch is treated as a right click) until another key is pressed on the keyboard.

Disabling the Touch Screen

If desired, the touchscreen can be disabled in the Windows control panel. Once disabled, the touchscreen remains disabled until it is enabled again.

To disable the touchscreen, access the Windows control panel and click on **System | Hardware | Device Manager | Human Interface Devices**. Under the Human Interface Devices there is a listing for Fujitsu Touch Panel (USB). Right click on this listing and select Disable from the menu.

To enable the touchscreen, follow the same process, selecting Enable from the right click menu.

Network Configuration

There are two networking options available for the VX5:

- 2.4GHz wireless radios
- Ethernet (RJ-45) connector.

2.4 GHz Wireless Radios

Please refer to Chapter 4, "Wireless Network Configuration" for details on configuring the 2.4 GHz wireless radio cards.

Ethernet Connector

When the VX5 is networked using the Ethernet connector, the VX5's networking options are set via the Microsoft Windows Control Panel. The same networking configuration options are available as in a standard PC.



For more information on configuring the Microsoft Windows network settings, please refer to the Windows Help feature or commercially available Windows networking literature.

Screen Blanking Utility

The VX5 can be configured to blank the display when the vehicle to which it is mounted is moving. When configured properly, the screen blanking feature provides a tamper resistant method to blank the vehicle screen. The screen blanking feature consists of a Windows application and a customer supplied cable connected to one of the COM ports on the VX5. Properly configured, the VX5 display is visible only when the cable provides a signal that the vehicle has stopped.

Screen blanking is available on VX5's with:

- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 or XP Professional operating systems.
- VX5 Screen Blanking Application.
- Microsoft .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later.
- Note: The .NET Framework is included in the LXE VX5 Windows XP software load. Customers with Windows 2000 and customers who load their own Windows operating system must download and install the .NET Framework from Microsoft's web site.

Step 1 – Build a Loopback Cable Assembly

The customer must supply their own cable. The cable must be designed so that pin 7 (RTS – Request to Send Output) and pin 8 (Clear to Send Input) of a D9 female connector provide continuity only when the vehicle is stopped (for example, via a switch on the accelerator pedal of the fork truck). All other pins on the connector must be left unconnected. If pins 7 and 8 do not provide continuity (or the cable is removed), the VX5 screen remains blank.



Figure 3-5 Loop Back Cable

The cable can be hooked to either the COM1 or COM2 port. The COM port used must be selected during "Step 3 - Configuring the Screen Control Service".

Step 2 – Uninstall Screen Control Service

Note: Earlier versions of the screen blanking utility ran as a Windows service. If an earlier version is installed on the VX5, it must be removed before installing the current version.

To uninstall the service, from a command prompt type:

```
C:\WINDOWS\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v1.1.xxxx\InstallUtil /u
ScreenCtrlService.exe
```

Where xxxx is the minor revision of the installed .NET framework.

Step 3 – Install the Screen Control Application

For the VX5, display blanking is handled by the screen control application.

- **IMPORTANT:** The proper loopback serial cable assembly must be attached prior to installation. Failure to attach the cable renders the VX5 inoperable until the cable is attached.
- 1. The user installing the utility must have administrator privileges. Locate VX5ScreenBlanking_Setup.msi in the C:\LXE_Files\Applications. Double click to launch the installer.
- 2. Verify the loopback cable is attached to the desired serial port.
- 3. Review the license agreement and click "I Agree" to proceed with the installation. If you do not agree to the terms, the installation is cancelled.
- 4. Be sure to select "Everyone" as illustrated below to ensure screen blanking is activated for all VX5 users.

🚭 ¥X5 Screen Blanking					
Select Installation Folder					
The installer will install VX5 Screen Blanking to the following folder.					
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, enter it below or click "Browse".					
Eolder: C:\Program Files\LXE\VX5 Screen Blanking\	B <u>r</u> owse Disk Cost				
Install VX5 Screen Blanking for yourself, or for anyone who uses this • Everyone • Just me	computer:				
Cancel < B	ack <u>N</u> ext >				

Figure 3-6 Screen Blanking Installation

5. The default values for the Screen Blanking Utility are to use COM2 with a 3 second delay. If this is acceptable, reboot when prompted. Otherwise, follow the steps in "Configuring the Screen Control Application" then reboot.

Step 3 – Configuring the Screen Control Application

To configure the screen blanking application to use a different COM port or delay, follow these steps.

1. Open a command window and change to the installation directory. The default directory is

C:\Program Files\LXE\VX5 Screen Blanking

2. Enter the following command:

VX5ScreenBlank.exe /c

3. Change the settings as desired.

Streen Blanking Configuration		
	com2: 💌 COM Port	1
	3000 On Delay in Milliseconds (0 to 15000)	
	OK Cancel	

Figure 3-7 Screen Blanking Configuration

4. Click OK after the appropriate changes are made. When you click OK a message indicates you must log out and log back on for the settings to take effect. If you have not rebooted after the initial installation, you must reboot now.

Operation

Since the screen control application was set up by a user with Administrator privileges (or privileges higher than the general user), general users of the VX5 must not have sufficient privileges to disable or uninstall the program. This prevents a general user from defeating the screen control application.

Operation of the VX5 is affected while the screen is blank. Keyboard input is disabled and the display backlight is off. Input from the keypad, touchscreen or other device **DOES NOT** wake up the display. The display only wakes up when the VX5 receives the signal that the vehicle has stopped and the delay timer has expired.

Error and Status logging

The Screen Control utility creates an event log **ScreenBlankingLog** which contains status and error messages related to this service. To access the log, select **Start** | **Control Panel** | **Administrative Tools** | **Event Viewer**. Then select **ScreenBlankingLog** from the left pane as shown below:

🛃 Event Viewer					- 🗆 ×			
Eile Action View Help								
Event Viewer (Local)	Saved Application Log 0 event(s)							
Application	Туре	Date	Time	Source	Categ			
Security System	There are no items to show in this view.							
	•				F			

Figure 3-8 Screen Control Event Log

In the example above, the service has not yet reported any events. If the list includes an error, click on the error for more details.

Uninstalling the Application

To uninstall the Screen Blanking application, select Start | Control Panel | Add or Remove Programs and select VX5 Screen Blanking

VX5 Delivered with No Hard Drive

How To Install 2.5" IDE Hard Drive

- 1. Turn the VX5 off and remove the power supply before opening the access cover located on the top of the VX5.
- 2. Loosen the three (3) Phillips head screws securing the access cover so the cover can be removed. The screws are a captive part of the cover and cannot be removed.
- 3. Slide the Hard Drive Sled (or bracket) out of the VX5.



Figure 3-9 Hard Drive Sled

Note: The tethered access panel cover is not shown in the illustration above.

- 4. Attach the hard drive to the hard drive sled, using 4 M3x4 flat head screws inserted through the holes in the bottom of the hard drive sled. Torque to 8.0±1 in/lb (0.9±.11 N/m). The VX5 accepts 2.5" IDE flash or rotating hard drives.
- 5. Insert the hard drive into the VX5. Slide the assembly into the opening from which the empty bracket was removed. Do not slide it all the way in.
- 6. Connect the hard drive cable to the connector pins on the back of the hard drive. Make sure the cable is centered correctly on the connector pins. Do not attempt to place the hard drive cable over the jumper pins.



Figure 3-10 Hard Drive Connector Pins

- 7. Insert the hard drive assembly the rest of the way into the VX5.
- 8. Reinstall the access panel cover, torquing the screws to 9±1 inch pounds (1.016±.11 N/m). The screws require a Phillips size 1 driver head.
- 9. If the VX5 displays a message such as "operating system not found" during the first boot with the new hard drive, it may be necessary to reboot. The error may be eliminated with a reboot. If the error persists, please review the BIOS settings for the primary hard drive. Also check the hard drive documentation for the proper jumper settings.

VX5 Delivered with No OS

Note: This section applies only to a VX5 ordered with no OS installed.

If the 'no Operating System (OS)' option was chosen when ordering the VX5, two possible options for installing the OS are detailed in this section:

- Install the OS using Norton GhostTM.
- Install the OS over the network.

Additionally, a Microsoft Windows image can be created on a hard drive before it is installed in the VX5. See "VX5 Delivered with No Hard Drive" earlier in this chapter for information on installing a hard drive in the VX5.

Note: It is assumed that the OS to be installed is Microsoft Windows.

It is necessary to make changes to the BIOS when using either of these options to install an OS. Please refer to "BIOS Setup" earlier in this chapter for more details.

The VX5 System Tools CD (LXE Part No. VX5A477DRIVERS) contains device drivers that are necessary when installing Microsoft Windows on a VX5 delivered with no OS. The device drivers contained on this CD need to be available during the Windows installation/configuration. For example, the drivers can be copied to a location where they can be accessed via network or USB floppy. Please see the section detailing the contents of this CD-ROM later in this chapter.

After installing Microsoft Windows, please refer to "Microsoft Windows Setup and Configuration" earlier in this chapter.

Installing Microsoft Windows with Norton Ghost



The requirements and process for using Norton Ghost depend on the version of Microsoft Windows to be installed on the VX5.

Microsoft Windows 2000

To use the Norton Ghost utility to install an OS, there must be a blank drive connected to the Primary IDE and a Compact Flash or ATA drive with a ghost image connected to the Secondary IDE.

Note: This procedure can also be used with Microsoft Windows NT. For NT versions of Windows, the image must be created on the same type of computer as the destination computer where the OS is to be used. Differences in hardware may keep NT from booting after it is loaded on the destination computer.

Hardware Required

- A PC where the original image will be produced.
- A Micro drive, PCMCIA ATA flash drive or Compact Flash drive that is at least 10MB larger than the ghost image.

Software Required

- Norton Ghost 2002 or newer
- Microsoft Windows image

How To Install Microsoft Windows 2000

- 1. With the primary hard drive installed in the VX5, insert a bootable Compact Flash or PCMCIA ATA drive into the secondary IDE slot. This drive should contain the ghost image and the Norton Ghost utility 2002 or newer.
- 2. Boot the VX5 and enter the BIOS by pressing F2.
 - *Note: Refer to "BIOS Setup" earlier in this chapter for more information on the BIOS changes made during this process.*
- 3. Select Advanced | I/O Device Configuration and ensure that the Local Bus Adapter is set to "Both".
- 4. Press <Esc> to return to the main menu.
- 5. Select **Boot** | **Boot Device Priority** and make sure the Secondary IDE device is first in the boot order.
 - Press <Enter> while "Hard Drive" is highlighted to expand the listing
 - Highlight the Secondary IDE device in the listing and press <2nd> <+> until it is listed before the Primary hard drive.
- 6. Save any changes made and allow the VX5 to boot.
- 7. Follow the instructions for the version of Ghost you are using to copy the ghost image from the Secondary IDE to the Primary IDE drive.
- 8. Once the image has been copied, power the VX5 down and remove the secondary drive.
- 9. Restart the VX5 and edit the BIOS to return the Primary IDE to the top of the boot order.
- 10. Save the change and reboot the VX5.
- 11. After the VX5 boots, verify that the image has been transferred and the unit is operating correctly.
- Note: You may wish to review the "Microsoft Windows Setup and Configuration" section, earlier in this chapter, to set up Windows as desired.

Microsoft Windows XP

To use the Norton Ghost utility to install an OS, there must be a blank drive connected to the Primary IDE and a Compact Flash or ATA drive with a ghost image connected to the Secondary IDE.

Note: This procedure can also be used with Microsoft Windows NT.

Hardware Required

- A PC where the original image will be produced.
- A Micro drive, PCMCIA ATA flash drive or Compact Flash drive that is at least 10MB larger than the ghost image.
- TEAC USB floppy drive or equivalent bootable USB floppy drive.

Note: Not all USB floppy drives are bootable devices.

Software Required

- Norton Ghost 2002 or equivalent
- Microsoft Windows image

How To Install Microsoft Windows XP

To install Microsoft Windows XP using Ghost 2002 or newer, a Ghost boot floppy is required. You will also need the Ghost license number from the Ghost program that made the Windows XP image. To make the Ghost floppy:

- 1. From Microsoft Windows, start the Ghost 2002 Boot Wizard.
- 2. Choose "Boot Disk with CD/R"
- 3. Connect the USB floppy drive to the VX5.
- 4. Boot the VX5 and enter the BIOS by pressing F2.
 - *Note: Refer to "BIOS Setup" earlier in this chapter for more information on the BIOS changes made during this process.*
- 5. Select Advanced | I/O Device Configuration and ensure that the USB Controller and USB Legacy Support are enabled.
- 6. Press <Esc> to return to the main menu.
- 7. Select **Boot** | **Boot Device Priority** and make sure that "Removable Devices" is listed first in the boot order.
- 8. Save any changes and exit the BIOS setup.
- 9. Insert the Ghost floppy in USB floppy drive and allow the VX5 to boot from the floppy.
- 10. Follow the directions to transfer the Microsoft Windows XP image to the VX5 hard drive.

Note: Do not restart the VX5 with Microsoft Windows running until you are ready to perform the "Out of box experience" process detailed earlier in this chapter. Please refer to "Microsoft Windows License Agreement" for more details.

- 11. Restart the VX5 and edit the BIOS to return the Primary IDE to the top of the list (to boot into Microsoft Windows).
- 12. Save the change and reboot the VX5.
- 13. After the VX5 boots, verify that the image has been transferred and the unit is operating correctly.
- Note: You may wish to review the "Microsoft Windows Setup and Configuration" section, earlier in this chapter, to set up Windows as desired.

Installing Microsoft Windows Over a Network

Using a PCMCIA Network Card

This section details installing the operating system over the network. This procedure assumes the VX5 has a formatted blank hard drive installed as the Primary IDE drive. You will also need software to enable the PCMCIA slot in which the Ethernet card will reside. For this example, that software will be Enabler that is delivered with the Socket LP-E Ethernet card.

Hardware Required

- Socket LP-E network card or equivalent.
 - Note: Bus cards will not fit into the PCMCIA slots.
- TEAC USB floppy drive or equivalent bootable USB floppy drive.
 - Note Not all USB floppy drives are bootable devices.
- USB adapter cable for VX5.

Software Required

- Bootable Microsoft Windows diskette.
- Software to enable PCMCIA slot.
 - Note: Enable is included with the Socket LP-E Ethernet card.
- Software needed to connect to your network (ie: ETHDRV.EXE, TCP.EXE, LSL.COM, odipkt.COM)

How To Install Microsoft Windows 2000 or XP

- 1. Create a bootable diskette.
- 2. Copy the utility to enable the PCMCIA slot and any files needed to connect to your network to the bootable diskette. A sample list of files to be included on the bootable diskette is included later in this section.
- 3. Edit all required files to allow the Ethernet card to become active. A list of sample files used in this process is provided later in this section.

Note: Different cards and different utilities may require different settings.

- 4. Connect the hardware listed above to the VX5.
- 5. Boot the VX5 and enter the BIOS by pressing F2.
 - *Note: Refer to "BIOS Setup" earlier in this chapter for more information on the BIOS changes made during this process.*
- 6. Select Advanced | I/O Device Configuration and ensure that the USB Controller and USB Legacy Support are enabled.
- 7. Press <Esc> to return to the main menu.
- 8. Select **Boot** | **Boot Device Priority** and make sure that "Removable Devices" is listed first in the boot order.
- 9. Save any changes made and exit the BIOS.
- 10. Insert the floppy drive and allow the VX5 to boot.

- 11. After connecting to the network, perform all necessary installations.
- 12. Restart the VX5 and edit the BIOS to return the primary IDE to the top of the boot order.
- 13. Save the change and reboot the VX5.
- 14. After the VX5 boots, verify that all software is installed and the unit is operating correctly.
- Note: You may wish to review the "Microsoft Windows Setup and Configuration" section, earlier in this chapter, to set up Windows as desired.

Files on Bootable Diskette

Note: The files included on the boot disk shown below are examples only. The files contained on your bootable diskette and the directory structure may vary depending on the network card and software used.

Directory of A:\

COMMAND.COM NET.CFG (See example file below) AUTOEXEC.BAT (See example file below) CONFIG.SYS (See example file below) HIMEM.SYS DIR.TXT EDIT.EXE ATTRIB.EXE FDISK.EXE XCOPY.EXE FORMAT.COM QBASIC.EXE SOCKETLP <DIR>

Directory of A:\SOCKETLP

CIRRFIX.EXE DRIVER.LST ENABLELP.EXE ETHDRV.EXE FTP.EXE IPSTAT.EXE LSL.COM NE2000.COM NE2000.INS NET.CFG ODIPKT.COM PCTCP.INI PING.EXE SKTID.EXE TCP.EXE TFTP.EXE

Sample Files for Installation Procedure

Note: The example files shown below are examples only. Your files may differ depending on the Ethernet card used.

NET.CONFIG

```
Link Driver NE2000
Port 340
Int 7

; Remove the semi-colon in front of the frame type you will use.
; This frame type must match what the NetWare server is using.
; FRAME Ethernet_802.2
; FRAME Ethernet_802.3
; FRAME Ethernet_SNAP
FRAME Ethernet_II
NetWare DOS Requester
FIRST NETWORK DRIVE = F

; If you know the name of your preferred server, remove the
; semi-colon below and enter the preferred server name after
```

```
; the equal sign.
;preferred server =
```

CONFIG.SYS

DEVICE=HIMEM.SYS /testmem:off FILES=30 BUFFERS=20

DEVICE=a:\socketlp\enablelp.exe membase=0xE8000 messages=enabled socket=1

LASTDRIVE=Z

AUTOEXEC.BAT

@echo off

```
cd\socketlp
LSL
ne2000
odipkt
SET PCTCP=a:\socketlp\pctpc.ini
ethdrv.exe
```
Using the Ethernet Port

This section provides only a general overview of the PXE boot and RIS service. For complete details, the user should consult Microsoft's documentation for PXE and RIS. This information is available on Microsoft's web site, www.microsoft.com.

Microsoft Remote Installation Services (RIS) can be used to install a Microsoft Windows operating system on a VX5 delivered with no OS. RIS uses DHCP based boot technology known as Preboot eXecution Environment (PXE).

Requirements

- A PC with Microsoft Windows 2000 Server with the following services:
 - o Remote Installation Services (RIS)
 - o Domain Name Systems (DNS)
 - o Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server
 - o Active Directory.
- A Microsoft Windows 2000 or XP image to download to VX5 computers.
- A VX5 configured for PXE boot located on the same physical network as the server PC.

How To Install Microsoft Windows 2000 or XP

- 1. Connect the VX5 to the network by inserting a network cable in the Ethernet port.
- 2. Boot the VX5 and enter the BIOS by pressing F2.
 - *Note: Refer to "BIOS Setup" earlier in this chapter for more information on the BIOS changes made during this process.*
- 3. Select **Boot** and change "Onboard LAN RPL ROM" to enabled.
- 4. Press <Esc> to return to the main menu.
- 5. Select **Boot** | **Boot Device Priority** and make sure that "Network boot" is listed first in the boot order.
- 6. Save any changes made and exit the BIOS.
- 7. Allow the VX5 to boot.
- 8. When the message is displayed, press F12 to connect to the RIS server.
- 9. When the file transfer is complete, reboot the VX5 and enter the BIOS by pressing F2.
- 10. Set "Onboard LAN RPL ROM" to disabled. Return primary IDE to the top of the boot order list.
- 11. Save any changes made and exit the BIOS.
- 12. After the VX5 boots, verify that the image has been transferred and the unit is operating correctly.

Installing Microsoft Windows From a CD

This section details installing the Microsoft Windows XP operating system from a CD-ROM. This procedure assumes the VX5 has a formatted blank hard drive installed as the Primary IDE drive.

Hardware Required

- VX5 computer with at least 10GB of free space on the hard drive
- Ethernet/USB dongle cable
- External USB CD-ROM drive
 - *Note:* The following drives have been tested to work with the VX5:
 - IOMEGA CD-RW 52x24x52x USB 2.0 external drive, model number CDRW55292EXT
 - TDK veloCD 5201ue 52x24x48x USB 2.0 external drive, model number UE-5201B
 - HP DVDwriter model number dvd300e

Software Required

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional installation CD
- LXE VX5 Driver CD, part no. VX5A477DRIVERS.

How To Install Microsoft Windows XP

- 1. Plug the CD drive into the USB connector on the end of the Ethernet/USB dongle cable.
- 2. Turn the VX5 on and press the F2 key when prompted to enter setup.

Note: Refer to "BIOS Setup" earlier in this chapter for more information on the BIOS changes made during this process.

- 3. Select **Boot | Boot Device Priority** and change the boot sequence to the following order: CD ROM, Hard Drive, Floppy Drive in that order.
- 4. Before exiting BIOS, insert the Windows XP Professional CD into the CD drive.
- 5. Exit and save BIOS changes.
- 6. During the reboot, watch for the message "Press any key to boot from the CD" and press any key.

Note: This message appears for a short time only. If no key is pressed before the message disappears, the VX5 must be rebooted.

- 7. This starts the Windows XP setup routine. Complete the installation answering the questions appropriately.
- 8. Install LXE drivers using the LXE VX5 Drivers CD.

The VX5 Drivers CD-ROM

The VX5 Drivers CD-ROM (LXE Part No. VX5A477DRIVERS) contains files that may be necessary for configuration of the VX5 computer. It is recommended that the device drivers listed below (as appropriate for your VX5 radio type and operating system) be available during Microsoft Windows installation and configuration. Since the VX5 does not have a CD-ROM drive, the device drivers can be copied to a floppy and accessed via a USB floppy drive. The device drivers can also be copied to a location on the network if a network connection is used to install the Windows OS.

After Microsoft Windows is installed, device drivers contained on the CD can be used to update default Windows device drivers, if necessary.



For more information on installing or updating Microsoft Windows device drivers, please refer to the Windows Help feature or commercially available Windows documentation.

The files on the CD are organized as follows:

\Radio_drvs\Summit\WinXP

Note: Do not install the radio card before the drivers are installed. The driver installation prompts for the radio card to be inserted at the applicable time.

This directory contains the radio software for the Summit radio. Click on the .msi file to install the radio driver and Summit Client Utility. Follow the onscreen directions for the installation.

Note: The Summit driver is only available for Windows XP.

\Radio_drvs\Cisco

Note: Do not install the radio card before the drivers are installed. The driver installation prompts for the radio card to be inserted at the applicable time.

Win2K – This directory contains the radio driver and radio firmware for the VX5 with a Cisco radio and Microsoft Windows 2000 operating system. Click on the IWSetup.exe icon and follow the on screen direction for the driver.

WinXP – This directory contains the radio driver and radio firmware for the VX5 with a Cisco radio and Microsoft Windows XP operating system. Click on the IWSetup.exe icon and follow the on screen direction for the driver.

\Radio_drvs\Symbol

Note: Do not install the radio card before the drivers are installed. The driver installation prompts for the radio card to be inserted at the applicable time.

Win2K – This directory contains the radio driver and radio firmware for the VX5 with a Symbol radio and Microsoft Windows 2000 operating system. Click on the Setup.exe icon and follow the on screen direction for the driver.

WinXP – This directory contains the radio driver and radio firmware for the VX5 with a Symbol radio and Microsoft Windows XP operating system. Click on the Setup.exe icon and follow the on screen direction for the driver.

\Win_2K

Contains drivers for use with the Microsoft Windows 2000 operating system:

\TouchScreen – Provides the touchscreen driver used on the VX5. The drivers are loaded by running FTSETUP.EXE.

\Display – This file provides an update to the display driver.

\Cardbus – Provides a driver for the Cardbus controller under Windows 2000.

\Audio - Provides an update to the audio driver for use with the sound card.

\Ethernet – Provides drivers to support the on-board Ethernet port.

\Wav_files - Contains .WAV files designed for the VX5's speaker frequency range.

\Win_XP

Contains drivers for use with the Microsoft Windows XP operating system:

\TouchScreen – Provides the touchscreen driver used on the VX5. The drivers are loaded by running FTSETUP.EXE.

\Display – This file provides an update to the display driver.

\Audio - Provides an update to the audio driver for use with the sound card.

\Ethernet – Provides drivers to support the on-board Ethernet port.

\Wav_files - Contains .WAV files designed for the VX5's speaker frequency range.

Wavelink Avalanche Enabler Configuration

Note: The Enabler is only available for VX5's equipped with a Microsoft Windows XP operating system.

LXE VX5 computers manufactured before October 2006 must have their drivers and system files upgraded before they can use the Avalanche Enabler functions. Please contact an LXE representative for details on upgrading the mobile device baseline.

If the user is NOT using Wavelink Avalanche to manage their mobile device, the Enabler should not be installed on the VX5.

Wavelink Avalanche and the Cisco ACU

For the Enabler to control the wireless settings on the Windows XP unit, the Cisco Aironet Utility must be manually disabled once the enabler has received settings from the Management Console. This is done by launching the Cisco ACU and accessing the "Select Profile" tab. From there, select the option "Use Another Application to Configure My Wireless Settings". When the VX5 is rebooted, the Avalanche Enabler will be controlling the wireless settings.

Network parameter configuration is supported for:

- IP address: DHCP or static IP
- RF network SSID
- DNS hosts (primary, secondary, tertiary)
- Subnet mask

Briefly ...

The Wavelink Avalanche Enabler installation file is loaded on the mobile device by LXE; however, the device is not configured to launch the installation file automatically. The installation application must be run manually the first time Avalanche is used. After the installation application is manually run, a reboot is necessary for the Enabler to begin normal performance. Following this reboot, the Enabler will by default be an auto-launch application. This behavior can be modified by accessing the Avalanche Update Settings panel through the Enabler Interface.

Enabler Install Process

- Doubletap the Avalanche Enabler EXE file in the C:\Wavelink folder. The filename is wle_VX5_3_50_04.EXE.
- Reboot the VX5.

Enabler Uninstall Process

To remove the LXE Avalanche Enabler from a VX5, use the Add/Remove Programs option from the Windows Control Panel.

Stop the Enabler Service

To stop the Enabler from monitoring for updates from the Avalanche MC Console:

- 1. Open the Enabler Settings Panels by tapping the Avalanche icon on the desktop.
- 2. Select File | Settings. Enter the password.
- 3. Select the Startup/Shutdown tab.
- 4. Select the "Do not monitor or launch Enabler" parameter to prevent automatic monitoring upon startup.
- 5. Select Stop Monitoring for an immediate shutdown of all enabler update functionality upon exiting the user interface.
- 6. Click the OK button to save the changes.
- 7. Reboot the device if necessary.

Update Monitoring Overview

There are three methods by which the Enabler on an LXE device can communicate with the Mobile Device Server running on the host machine.

- Wired via a serial cable between the Mobile Device Server and the VX5 (only COM1 is supported for this connection on the VX5).
- Wired via a USB connection, using ActiveSync, between the Mobile Device Server and the mobile device.
- Wirelessly via the 2.4GHz network card and an access point

After installing the Enabler on the mobile unit, a reboot is required for the Enabler to begin normal functionality. Following a mobile device reboot, the Enabler searches for an Agent, first by polling all available serial ports and then over the wireless network. The designation of the mobile device to the Avalanche Manager is VX5.

The Enabler running on the LXEVX5 will attempt to access only COM1. "Agent not found" will be reported if the agent is not located or a serial port is not present or available.

The wireless connection is made using the default network interface on the mobile device therefore the device must be actively communicating with the network for this method to succeed. If an Agent or Management Console is found, the Enabler will automatically attempt to apply all wireless and network settings from the active profile. The Enabler will also automatically download and process all available packages.

Mobile Device Wireless and Network Settings

Once the connection to the Mobile Device Server is established, the Enabler will attempt to apply all network and wireless settings contained in the active profile. The success of the application of settings is dependent upon the local configuration of control parameters for the Enabler. These local parameters cannot be overridden from the Avalanche Mobility Center Console.

The default Enabler adapter control setting are:

- Manage network settings enabled
- Use Avalanche network profile enabled
- Manage wireless settings enabled for VX5

To configure the Avalanche Enabler management of the network and wireless settings:

- 1. Open the Enabler Settings Panels by tapping the Avalanche icon on the desktop.
- 2. Select **File** | **Settings**. Enter the password.
- 3. Select the Adapters tab.
- 4. Choose settings for the "Use Manual Settings" parameter.
- 5. Choose settings for "Manage Network Settings", "Manage Wireless Settings" and "Use Avalanche Network Profile".
- 6. Click the OK button to save the changes.
- 7. Reboot the device.

The designation of the mobile device to the Avalanche Manager is VX5.

See Also: "Using Wavelink Avalanche on LXE Windows Computers".

Enabler Configuration

The Enabler user interface application is launched by clicking:

either the Avalanche icon on the desktop or Taskbar

or

Avalanche Icon

selecting Avalanche from the Programs menu.

The opening screen presents the user with the connection status and a navigation menu.

A A	valan	:he		
Eile	⊻iew	<u>H</u> elp		
			wavelink.	
			AVALANCHE	
Age	nt no	t found.		_
Wai	iting t	o retry		
	_	-		-
Age	nt no	t found.		



File	View	Help
Connect	Updates	Adapter Status
Abort	Programs	About
Settings	Icons	
Exit	List	
	Details	
	Launchable	
	Installed	
	Postponed	
	Rejected	
	All Packages	

Connect	The Connect option under the File menu allows the user to initiate a manual connection to the Mobile Device Server. The connection methods, by default, are wireless and COM connections. Any updates available will be applied to the mobile device immediately upon a successful connection.		
Abort	Stop transmission.		
Settings	The Settings option under the File menu allows the user to access the control panel to locally configure the Enabler settings. The Enabler control panel is, by default, password protected. The default password is system. The password is not case-sensitive.		
Exit	The Exit option is password protected. The default password is leave. The password is not case-sensitive. If changes were made on the Startup/Shutdown tab screen, then after entering		
	the password, tap OK and the following screen is displayed: Avalanche Monitor Avalanche Monitor Image: Continue monitoring for updates? Image: Would you like to continue monitoring for updates? Image: Continue monitoring for updates? Image: Change the option if desired. Tap the X button to cancel Exit. Tap the OK button to exit the Avalanche applet.		

File Menu Options

Avalanche Update Settings

Access: Start | Avalanche | File | Settings

Use these menu options to setup the Avalanche Enabler on the mobile device. LXE recommends changing and then saving the changes (reboot) before connecting to the network.

Alternatively, the Mobile Device Server on can be disabled until needed (refer to the *Wavelink Avalanche Mobility Center User's Guide*. for details).

Menu Options

Settings Tab	Function
Connection	Enter the IP Address or host name of the Mobile Device Server. Set the order in which serial ports or RF are used to check for the presence of the Mobile Device Server.
Execution	Unavailable in this release.
Update	Set options for updates and synchronizing clock with Mobile Device Server.
Startup/Shutdown	Set options for Enabler program startup or shutdown.
Display	Set up the Windows display at startup, on connect and during normal mode. The settings can be adjusted by the user.
Shortcuts	Add, delete and update shortcuts to user-allowable applications.
Adapters	Enable or disable network and wireless settings. Select an adapter and switch between the Avalanche Network Profile and manual settings.
Status	View the current adapter signal strength and quality, IP address, MAC address, SSID, BSSID and Link speed. The user cannot edit this information.

Connection

Avalanche Update 9	Settings		? ×			
Startup/Shutdown Connection	Display Shortcu	its Adap 	oters Status Update			
Avalanche Agent	Address:					
Bind to an add Restrict A Minimum	Bind to an adapter Bestrict Adapter Link Speed Minimum Link Speed: 1000 kbs					
Update when new connections are detected. Serial						
Check serial of	connection for update	es.				
		ок	Cancel			

Figure 3-12 Connection Options

Avalanche Agent Address	Enter the IP Address or host name of the Mobile Device Server assigned to the mobile device.
Check Serial Connection	Indicates whether the Enabler should first check for serial port connection to the Mobile Device Server before checking for a wireless connection to the Mobile Device Server.

Execution

 Avalanche Update Settings
 ? ×

 Startup/Shutdown
 Display
 Shortcuts
 Adapters
 Status

 Connection
 Execution
 Update

 Image: Auto-Execute selection
 Select Auto-Execution App:
 Image: Auto-Execution (seconds):
 5

 Delay before execution (seconds):
 5
 0

 Image: DK
 Cancel

Figure 3-13 Execution Options (Dimmed)

Auto-Execute Selection	An application that has been installed with the Avalanche Mobility Center Console system can be run automatically following each boot.
Select Auto-Execute App	The drop-down box provides a list of applications that have been installed by the Avalanche Mobility Center Console.
Delay before execution	Time delay before launching Auto-Execute application.

Note the dimmed options on this panel. This menu option is designed to manage downloaded applications for automatic execution upon startup.

Server Contact

Avalanche Update	Settings	? ×
Startup/Shutdown Connection	Display Shortcuts	Adapters Status Update
Check for upda Sync clock with Check for upda every: da starting at: 00	tes at start up. a gent on update. tes periodically. y v too (Midnight) v	
	OK	Cancel

Figure 3-14 Server Contact Options

Check for updates at start up	Connect to the Mobile Device Server when the Enabler is accessed.
Sync Clock	Reset the time on the mobile computer based on the time on the Mobile Device Server.
Check for updates periodically	Allows the administrator to configure the Enabler to contact the Mobile Device Server and query for updates at a regular interval beginning at a specific time.

Startup/Shutdown

Avalanche Update Se	ttings				? ×
Connection	Exe	cution	1	Upd	ate
Startup/Shutdown	Display 📔	Shortcuts	Adap	iters	Status
Program Størtup-					
C Do not monitor	or launch u	itility.			
Monitor for <u>upd</u>	ates and m	essages.			
C Monitor and lau	nch update	e utility.			
Program Shutdown					
Continue monitor	oring				
C Stop monitoring	I				
				_	
		OK		С	ancel

Figure 3-15 Startup / Shutdown Options

Do not monitor or launch utility	When the device boots, do not launch the Enabler application and do not attempt to connect to the Mobile Device Server.
Monitor for updates	Attempt to connect to the Mobile Device Server and process any updates that are available. Do not launch the Enabler application.
Monitor and launch update utility	Attempt to connect to the Mobile Device Server and process any updates that are available. Launch the Enabler application.
Program Shutdown (Continue or Stop monitoring)	The system administrator can control whether the Enabler continues to monitor the Mobile Device Server for updates once the Enabler application is exited.

Display

Avalanche Update 9	Settings	? ×
Connection Startup/Shutdown	Execution Display Shortcuts	Update Adapters Status
At Startup show Upd Half Screen C Hidden On Connection show Atter connection sho After connection sho After connection sho After screen As is As is	ate Window: Full Screen Full Screen w Update Window: Hidden	
	OK	Cancel

Figure 3-16 Window Display Options

Update Window Display

The user interface for the Enabler can be configured to dynamically change based on the status of the connection with the Mobile Device Server.

- At startup Half screen, Hidden or Full screen. Default is Half screen.
- On connect As is, Half screen, full screen, Locked full screen. Default is As is.

Normal Half screen, Hidden or As is. Default is As is.

Shortcuts

Avalanche Updat	e Settings		? ×
Connection Startup/Shutdow	Execu n Display Sho	ion ortcuts Ad	Update apters Status
	Ada Ed	t te	
		OK	Cancel

Figure 3-17 Application Shortcuts

Configure shortcuts to other applications on the mobile device. Shortcuts are viewed and activated in the Programs panel. This limits the user's access to certain applications when the Enabler is controlling the mobile device display.

Adapters

Note: LXE recommends the user review the network settings configuration utilities and the default values in Chapter 4 before setting All Adapters to Enable in the Adapters applet.

Avalanche Update Se	ttings		? ×
Connection Startup/Shutdown	Execution Display Shortcuts	Upd Adapters	ate Status
All Adapters	k Settings		
Current Adapter	s Settings		
No wireless adapte	rs present	<u>•</u>	
C Use <u>Avalanche</u> C Use <u>Avalanche</u>	as the primary adapter Network Profile tings	<mark>▲</mark>	
			1
	OK	c	ancel

Figure 3-18 Adapters Options – Network

Manage Network Setting	When enabled, the Enabler will control the network settings. This parameter cannot be configured from the Avalanche Mobility Center Console and is enabled by default.
Manage Wireless Settings	When enabled, the Enabler will control the wireless settings. This parameter cannot be configured from the Avalanche Mobility Center Console and is disabled by default.
Current Adapter	Lists all network adapters currently installed on the mobile device.
Primary Adapter	Indicates if the Enabler is to attempt to configure the primary adapter (active only if there are multiple network adapters).
Use Avalanche Network Profile	The Enabler will apply all network settings sent to it by the Avalanche Mobility Center Console.

Avalanche Icon	Selecting the Avalanche Icon will access the Avalanche Network Profile tab which will display current network settings. Image: Avalanche Network Profile Properties Image: Profile Image: Profile
	Figure 3-19 Avalanche Network Profile Displayed
Use Manual Settings	When enabled, the Enabler will ignore any network or wireless settings coming from the Avalanche Mobility Center Console and use only the network settings on the mobile device.
Properties Icon	Selecting the Properties icon displays the Manual Settings Properties dialog applet. From here, the user can configure Network, DNS and Wireless parameters using the displays shown below:

Note: A reboot may be required after enabling or disabling these options.

Network

DNS

Wireless

Manual Settings Properties	Manual Settings Properties	Manual Settings Properties
Network DNS Wireless	Network DNS Wireless	Network DNS Wireless
Manage network settings	Manage network settings	Manage wireless settings
Use server-assigned IP address Use the following IP address:	Name server addresses may be automatically assigned if DHCP is enabled on this adapter.	SSID:
IP Address: 100 . 100 . 100 . 100	Primary DNB:	Energypubric Upen System (None)
Subnet mask: 255 . 255 . 0	Secondary DNB:	
Default gateway:	Erimary W/NS:	
	Secondary W/NS:	
	Default Domain:	
OK Cancel Apply	OK Cancel Apply	OK Cancel Apply

For descriptions of these Enabler parameters, refer to Chapter 4 "Wireless Network Configuration".

Figure 3-20 Manual Settings Properties Panels

When you download a profile that is configured to manage network and wireless settings, the Enabler will not apply the manage network and wireless settings to the adapter unless the global **Manage wireless settings** and **Manage network settings** options are enabled on the Adapters panel (see Figure titled *Adapters Options – Network*).

Until these options are enabled, the network and wireless settings are controlled by the third-party software associated with these settings.

Status

The Status panel displays the current status of the mobile device network adapter selected in the drop down box. Note the availability of the Windows standard Refresh button. When tapped, the signal strength, signal quality and link speed are refreshed for the currently selected adapter. It also searches for new adapters and may cause a slight delay to refresh the contents of the drop-down menu.

Avalanche Update	Settings	? ×
Connection Startup/Shutdown	Execution Display Shortcuts Adap	Update ters Status
Cisco 350		· 😰
Signal Strength:		
Signal Quality:		
IP Address:	100.100.100.100	
MAC Address:	00:15:e9:00:00:00	
SSID:	SSID2	
BSSID:	00:02:2d:00:00:00	
Link Speed:	11.0 Mbps	
	ОК	Cancel

Figure 3-21 Status Display

Link speed indicates the speed at which the signal is being sent from the adapter to the mobile device. Speed is dependent on signal strength.

Chapter 4 Wireless Network Configuration

Introduction

Note: This chapter is only applicable to wireless network configuration. If an Ethernet cable provides the network connection, please refer to "Network Configuration" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration".

The VX5 radios rely on Microsoft Windows network configuration via the Windows Control Panel and configuration software that depends on the type of radio installed in the VX5. The VX5 has all necessary radio software and drivers installed before it is shipped. The radio software includes a configuration utility and a status monitor or diagnosis utility.



For information on network configuration under Microsoft Windows, please refer to commercially available Windows networking guides, Windows on-line help screens or Windows network troubleshooter.

The VX5 computer is available with Summit 802.11 b/g or Cisco or Symbol 802.11b radios. The radio can be configured for no encryption, WEP encryption or WPA security (N/A with Symbol radio).

Certificates are necessary for many of the WPA authentications. Please refer to the "Certificates" section at the end of this chapter for more information on generating and installing certificates.

Security Options	Radio Type			
Supported	Summit	Cisco	Symbol	
None	Yes	Yes	Yes	
WEP	Yes	Yes	Yes	
LEAP	Yes	Yes	Yes	
WPA-PSK	Yes	Yes	No	
WPA/LEAP	Yes	Yes	No	
PEAP-MSCHAP	Yes	Yes	No	
PEAP-GTC	Yes	Yes	No	
EAP-TLS	Yes	Yes	No	
EAP-FAST	Yes	No	No	

Please refer to the table below for the security options supported for each radio type.

Notes:

Summit radio is available with Microsoft Windows XP Operating system only.

While the Summit SCU does not support EAP-TLS, the Summit radio may be used with the Windows Wireless Zero Config utility for EAP-TLS.

WPA for Cisco radio is available with Windows XP operating system only, SP2 recommended.

Use Windows to Configure Wireless Settings

Unless otherwise directed in the following instructions, make sure Windows is NOT used to configure wireless network settings. Select the Network Connection icon in the Windows Control panel. Right click on the wireless network icon and select Properties.

"Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings" must remain unchecked for the SCU (Summit), ACU (Cisco) or Mobile Companion (Symbol) to control the wireless network configuration.

🔔 Wireless Network Connection Properties	? ×		
General Wireless Networks Advanced			
Use <u>W</u> indows to configure my wireless netwo	ork settings		
Available networks:			
To connect to an available network, click Con	figure.		
& WLAN1	Configure		
Y WLAN2	R <u>e</u> fresh		
Ereferred networks: Automatically connect to available networks in the order listed below: Move up Move down Add Eernove Properties Learn about setting up wireless network configuration.			

Figure 4-1 Windows Wireless Network Properties

Summit Radio

	Please refer to the "LXE Security Primer" to prepare the Authentication Server and Access Point for VX5 communication.
Pate/Time	It is important that all dates are correct on mobile computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.

The Summit radio is an 802.11g radio, capable of both 802.11b and 802.11g data rates. This radio supports no encryption, WEP, LEAP or WPA (PEAP-MSCHAP, PEAP-GTC, WPA/LEAP and WPA-PSK). EAP-TLS is supported with the Windows Wireless Zero Config utility.

Summit Client Utility

Access: Start | Programs | Summit | SCU or SCU Icon on Desktop

🚮 Summit Client Utility 💦 📮 🗖 🗙		
Main Prol	file Status	Diags Global
		Admin Logout
		Disable Radio
Active Profile	Default	•
Status: Radio Type: Reg.Domain: Driver: SCU:	Is Not Ass BG FCC v1.03.16 v1.03.16 About SCU	ociated
		Exit

Figure 4-2 Summit Client Utility

The Main tab provides information, admin login and active profile selection.

Profile specific parameters are found on the **Profile** tab. The parameters on this tab can be set to unique values for each profile.

The Status tab contains information on the current connection.

The **Diags** tab provides utilities to troubleshoot the radio.

Global parameters are found on the **Global Settings** tab. The values for these parameters apply to all profiles.

Help

Help is available by clicking the ? icon in the title bar on most SCU screens.

Summit Tray Icon

The Summit tray icon **d** provides access to the SCU and a visual indicator of radio status.

The Summit tray icon is displayed when:

- The Summit radio is installed and active
- The Windows Zero Config utility is not active
- The Tray Icon setting is On

Click the icon to launch the SCU.

Use the tray icon to view the radio status:

- The radio is not currently associated or authenticated to an Access Point
- The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -80 dBm or weaker
- The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is stronger than -80dBm but not stronger than -60 dBm
- The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is stronger than -60 dBm but not stronger than -40 dBm
- The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is stronger than -40 dBm

Wireless Zero Config Utility and the Summit Radio

- The WZC utility has an icon in the toolbar that looks like networked computers with a red X through them, indicating that Wireless Zero Config application is enabled but the connection is inactive at this time (the VX5 is not connected to a network).
- You can use either the Wireless Zero Configuration Utility or the Summit Client Utility to connect to your network. LXE recommends using the Summit Client Utility to connect to your network for all methods except EAP-TLS. The Wireless Zero Configuration Utility cannot control the complete set of security features of the radio.

Select **ThirdPartyConfig** in the Active Profile drop down list as the active profile. The Summit Client Utility passes control to Wireless Zero Config and the WZC Wireless Information control panel.

Next select **Start** | **Control Panel** | **Network Connections**. Click the Wireless connection and then click the **Properties** button. Next select the **Wireless Network** tab. Make sure the

Make sure "Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings" is checked. Use the options in the Wireless Zero Config panels to setup radio and security settings.

To switch back to Summit Client radio control, uncheck "Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings". Start the SCU and select any other profile in the drop down list, except ThirdPartyConfig. Radio control is passed to the SCU.

Note: Wireless Zero Config must be used for EAP-TLS authentication.

Main Tab

🚮 Summit Cl	ient Utility	/ ? >	K
Main Prof	ile Status	Diags Global	
		Admin Logout	
SUM	MIT	Disable Radio	l
Active Profile:	Default	-	l
Status: Radio Type: Reg.Domain: Driver: SCU:	Is Associa BG FCC v1.03.16 v1.03.16 About SCU	sted	
		Exit	

Figure 4-3 SCU – Main Tab

The Main tab displays information about the radio including:

- SCU (Summit Client Utility) version
- Driver version
- Regulatory Domain
- Copyright Info may be accessed by clicking the About SCU button
- Active Profile Select from the profiles created using the Profile tab.
- Status of the radio (Down, Associated, Authenticated, etc).

The **Disable/Enable Radio** button does not work in this revision. Clicking this button has no effect.

The **Admin Login** button provides access to editing radio parameters as well as adding, renaming and deleting profiles. Profile and Global parameters may only be edited after entering the Admin Login password. The Active Profile may be changed without logging in. Once logged in, the button label changes to **Admin Logout**. The admin is also automatically logged out when the SCU is exited.

Admin Login

Admin Password Entry	×
Enter Admin Password:	
1	
OK	Cancel

To login to Admin mode, click the Admin login button.

Figure 4-4 Admin Password Entry

Enter the Admin password and press OK. If the password is incorrect, an error message is displayed. The default password is SUMMIT.

Note: The password is case sensitive!

The Admin password can be changed on the Global Settings tab.

The end user can:

- Turn radio On/Off on the Main tab
- Select active Profile on the Main tab
- View the current parameter settings for the profiles on the Profile tab
- View the global parameter settings on the Global Settings tab.
- The current connection details on the Status tab
- Radio status, software versions and regulatory domain on the Main tab
- Access additional troubleshooting features on the Diags tab.

After Admin login, the use can also:

- Create, edit, rename and delete profiles on the Profile tab
- Edit global parameters on the Global Setting tabs.

Profile Tab

Note: If the Admin password is not entered, the user can view the profile parameter settings but cannot make any changes. The buttons on this tab are grayed out if the user is not logged in.

Summit Client Utilit	y ? 💶 🗙
Main Profile St	atus Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default	SDC
New Rename	Delete Scan
Radio: SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	
Encryption:	EAP Type:
None 💌	None
WEP keys/PSKs	Credentials
Save Changes:	Commit
	Exit

Figure 4-5 SCU – Profile Tab

When logged in as an Admin (see the Main tab), use the Profile tab to manage profiles:

- **Rename** Gives the profile a new, unique name. If the new name is not unique, an error message is displayed and the profile is not renamed.
- **Delete** Deletes the profile. The current active profile cannot be deleted. In that case, an error message is displayed and the profile is not deleted.
- **New** Creates a new profile with the default settings (see the table below) and prompts for a name. The name must be unique. If not, an error message is displayed and the profile is not created.
- **Commit** Ensures that the profile settings made on this screen are saved in the profile.

When not logged in, the parameters can be viewed, but cannot be changed.

Parameters

IMPORTANT – Remember to click the **Commit** button after making changes to ensure the changes are saved.

Config

A string of 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters, name of the Profile

Default: Default

SSID

A string of up to 32 alphanumeric characters, the Service Set Identifier (SSID) of the WLAN to which the radio connects

Default: Blank

Client Name

A string of up to 16 characters – Name assigned to the radio and the device using the radio. The client name may be passed to networking radio devices, e.g. Access Points.

Default: Blank

Power Save

Power save mode.

Options:	CAM = Constantly Awake Mode, power save off
	Maximum = Maximum power saving mode
	Fast = Fast power saving mode

Default: Fast

Tx Power

Desired transmit power.

Options:	Maximum = Max power for current regulatory domain 50, 30, 10 or 1 mW
Default:	Maximum

Bit Rate

Options:	Auto = Rate negotiated automatically with the AP
	1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 or 54 Mbit

Default: Auto

Radio Mode

Specify 802.11g and/or 802.11b when communicating with AP.

Options:	B rates only
	BG Rates Full
	G rates only
	BG optimized
Default:	BG optimized

Auth Type

802.11 authentication type used when associating with AP

Options:	Open
	Shared key
	LEAP

Default: Open

Note: Set the Auth Type radio parameter is set to "Open" for all configurations unless using LEAP (not WPA) and the AP is configured for network EAP only. In this case, set the Auth Type radio parameter to "LEAP".

EAP Type

Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) type used for 802.1x authentication to AP

Options: None LEAP EAP-FAST PEAP-MSCHAP PEAP-GTC

Default: None

Note: The EAP type chosen determines if the **Credentials** button is active. Available entries on the Credentials pop up window vary by EAP type chosen.

Encryption

Type of encryption used to protect transmitted data.

Options: None Manual WEP Auto WEP WPA PSK WPA TKIP WPS2 PSK WPA2 AES CCKM TKIP CKIP Manual CKIP Auto

Default: None

- *Note: The Encryption type chosen determines if the* **WEP/PSK Keys** *button is active. Available entries on the pop up window vary by encryption type chosen.*
- IMPORTANT The settings for Auth Type, EAP Type and Encryption depend on the security type chosen. Please refer to "Summit Wireless Security", later in this chapter, to determine the proper settings for the security type implemented on the wireless LAN.

122

Status Tab

Summit Client Utility 💦 📮 🗔 🗙
Main Profile Status Diags Global
Profile: Default Status: Associated Device Name: VX5001 IP: 100.100.100.100 MAC: 00:17:23:00:00:00 AP Name: AP001 IP: 100.100.100.200 MAC: 00:02:2d:00:00:00 Beacon Period: 100 DTIM: 1 Connection Channel: 5 Bit Rate: 11Mbps Tx Power: 80 mW Signal Strength: -57 dBm
Signal Quality: 82 %
Exit

Figure 4-6 SCU – Status Tab

This screen provides information on the radio:

- The profile being used
- The client name, IP address and MAC address
- The status of the radio card (down, associated, authenticated, etc.)
- The name, IP address and MAC address of the Access Point (AP) maintaining the connection to the network
- Signal strength (changes with network activity)
- Channel currently being used for wireless traffic
- Current transmit power in mW
- Bit rate in Mbit.

There are no user entries on this screen.

Note: After completing radio configuration, it is a good idea to review this screen to verify the radio has associated (no encryption, WEP) or authenticated (LEAP, any WPA), as indicated above.

Diags Tab

Summit Client Uti	lity ? 💶 🗙
Main Profile S Profile: Default IP Address: 100.1	5tatus Diags Global Glo
(Re)connect	Release/Renew
Start Ping	
Diagnostics	Save To
Diagnostics Or	utput
	Exit

Figure 4-7 SCU – Diags Tab

The Diags screen can be used for troubleshooting network traffic and radio connectivity issues.

- (**Re**)connect Use this button to apply (or reapply) the current profile and attempt to associate or authenticate to the wireless LAN. All activity is logged in the Diagnostic Output box on the lower part of the screen.
- **Diagnostics** Also attempts to (re)connect to the wireless LAN. However, this option provides more data in the Diagnostic Output box than the (Re)connect option. This data dump includes radio state, profile settings, global settings, and a list of broadcast SSID APs. (Not available in this release)
- Start Ping Start a continuous ping to the IP address specified in the text box to the right of this button. Once the button is clicked, the ping begins and the button label changes to Stop Ping. Clicking the button ends the ping. The ping also ends when any other button on this screen is clicked or the user browses away from the Diags tab. The results of the ping are displayed in the Diagnostic Output box.
- **Release/Renew** Obtain a new IP address through release and renew. All activity is logged in the Diagnostic Output box. If a fixed IP address has been assigned to the radio, this is also noted in the Diagnostic Output box. Note that the current IP address is displayed above this button.

Global Settings Tab

The parameters on the global settings tab can be changed when an Admin is logged on. Without the admin login, the current values for the parameters can be viewed, but they cannot be edited.

Summit Client	Utility	? _ 🗆 ×
Main Profil	e Status Diags	Global
Property:	Value:	SDC
Roam Trigger Roam Delta Roam Period BG Channel S Aggressive So CCX features WMM TX Diversity	et	T
Save Changes	Com	ımit
	[Exit

Figure 4-8 SCU – Global Settings Tab

Parameters

IMPORTANT – Remember to click the **Commit** button after making changes to ensure the changes are saved.

After changes are made to the Global parameters, one of the following actions must be performed:

- The VX5 must be rebooted
- The radio must be ejected and reinserted
- The radio must be disabled and then re-enabled in the Windows Control Panel.
- Note: Custom parameter options LXE does not support the parameter Custom option. The parameter value is displayed as "Custom" when the operating system registry has been edited to set the Summit parameter to a value that is not available from the parameter's drop down list. Selecting Custom from the drop down list has no effect. Selecting any other value from the drop down list will overwrite the "Custom" value set in the registry.

Roam Trigger

If signal strength is less than this trigger value, the radio looks for a different AP with a stronger signal.

Options:	-50, -55, -60, -65, -70, -75 dBm, Custom (see Note above)
Default:	-65 dBm

Roam Delta

Amount by which the new AP's signal strength must exceed the current AP's signal strength before roaming is attempted.

Options:	5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35 dBm, Custom (see Note above)
Default:	10 dBm

Roam Period

The amount of time, after association or a roam scan with no roam, that the radio collects Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) scan data before a roaming decision is made.

Options:	5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60 sec, Custom (see Note above)
Default:	10 seconds

BG Channel Set

Defines the 2.4GHz channels to be scanned for an AP when the radio is contemplating roaming..

Options:	Full (all channels)
	1, 6, 11 (the most commonly used channels)
	1, 7, 13 (For ETSI and TELEC radios only)
	Custom (see Note above)

Default: Full

Aggressive Scan

When set to On and the current connection to an AP becomes weak, the radio scans for available APs more aggressively. Aggressive scanning work with standard scanning (set through Roam Trigger, Roam Delta and Roam Period). Aggressive scanning should b set to On unless there is significant co-channel interference because of overlapping APs on the same channel.

Options: On, Off Default: On

CCX Features

Use of Cisco Compatible Extensions (CCX) radio management and AP specified maximum transmit power features.

Options: On, Off Default: Off

WMM

Use of Wi-Fi Multimedia extensions.

Options: On, Off Default: Off

TX Diversity

How to handle antenna diversity when transmitting packets to AP.

Options:	Main only = Main antenna only
	Aux only = Aux antenna only
	On = Use diversity

Default: On



For a VX5 with a single external antenna use **Main Only**. For a VX5 with dual external antennas use **On**.

RX Diversity

How to handle antennas diversity when receiving packets from AP.

Options:	Main Only = use main antenna only
	Aux Only = use aux. antenna only
	On-start on Main = On startup use main antenna
	On-start on Aux = On startup use aux antenna

Default: On-start on Main



For a VX5 with a single external antenna use **Main Only**. For a VX5 with dual external antennas use **On-start on main**.

Frag Thresh

If the packet size (in bytes) exceeds the specified number of bytes set in the fragment threshold, the packet is fragmented (sent as several pieces instead of as one block). Use a low setting in areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of radio interference.

Options:	256 to 2346
Default [.]	2346

RTS Thresh

If the packet size exceeds the specified number of bytes set in the Request to Send (RTS) threshold, an RTS is sent before sending the packet. A low RTS threshold setting can be useful in areas where many client devices are associating with the Access Point.

Options:	0 to 2347
Default:	2347

LED

The LED on the radio card is not visible to the user when the radio card is installed in a sealed mobile device.

Options: On, Off Default: Off

Tray Icon

Determines if the Summit icon is displayed in the system tray.

Options: On, Off Default: On

Hide Password

If On, the Summit Client Utility masks passwords as they are typed and when they are viewed.

Options: On, Off Default: Off

Admin Password

A string of up to 64 alphanumeric characters that must be entered when the Admin Login button is tapped. If Hide Password is On, the password is masked when typed in the Admin Password Entry text box. The password is Case Sensitive.

Default: SUMMIT

Note: Password is case sensitive.

Auth Timeout

Specifies the number of seconds the Summit software waits for an EAP authentication request to succeed or fail. If the authentication credentials are stored in the active profile and the authentication times out, the association fails. If the authentication credentials are not stored in the active profile and the authentication times out, the user is reprompted to enter the credentials.

Options: An integer from 3 to 60

Default: 8

Certs Path

A valid directory path, of up to 64 characters, where Root CA certificates for EAP authentication (PEAP/MSCHAP, PEAP/GTC) are stored.

LXE suggests ensuring the directory path currently exists before assigning the path in this parameter.

Default: \Files\Summit\certs
Ping Payload

Maximum amount of data to be transmitted on a ping.

Options:	32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024 bytes
Default:	32

Ping Timeout ms

The amount of time, in milliseconds, that a device will be continuously pinged. The Stop Ping button can be tapped to end the ping process ahead of the ping timeout.

Options:	0 to 30,000 ms
Default:	5000

Ping Delay ms

The amount of time, specified in milliseconds, between each ping.

Options: 0 to 30,000 ms Default: 1000

Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials

When using wireless security that requires a user name and password to be entered, the Summit Client Utility offers two choices:

- The Username and Password may be entered on the Credentials screen. If this method is selected, anyone using the device can access the network.
- The Username and Password are left blank on the Credentials screen. When the device attempts to connect to the network, a sign on screen is displayed. The user must enter the Username and Password at that time to authenticate.

How to: Use Stored Credentials

- 1. After completing the other entries in the profile, click on the Credentials button.
- 2. Enter the Username and Password on the Credentials screen and click the OK button.
- 3. Click the **Commit** button.
- 4. For LEAP, WPA/LEAP and EAP-FAST with automatic PAC provisioning, configuration is complete.
- 5. Access the Credentials screen again. Make sure the **Validate server** checkbox is checked fro PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC.
- 6. Make sure the certificate or manually created PAC has been copied to the directory specified in the Certs Path global variable.
- 7. For EAP-FAST with manual PAC provisioning, enter the PAC Filename and Password.
- 8. For PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC enter the CA certificate filename.
- 9. Click the **OK** button then the **Commit** button.
- 10. Verify the device is authenticated by reviewing the Status tab. When the device is property configured, the Status tab indicates the device is Authenticated and the method used.
- *Notes: More details are provided in the appropriate Summit Wireless Security section following in this chapter.*

If invalid credentials are entered into the stored credentials, the authentication will fail. No error message is displayed and the user is not prompted to enter valid credentials.

How to: Use Sign On Screen

- 1. After completing the other entries in the profile, click on the **Credentials** button. Leave the Username and Password blank. No entries are necessary on the Credentials screen for LEAP, WPA/LEAP or EAP-FAST using automatic PAC provisioning.
- 2. Make sure the Validate server checkbox is checked fro PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC.
- 3. Make sure the certificate or manually created PAC has been copied to the directory specified in the Certs Path global variable.
- 4. For EAP-FAST with manual PAC provisioning, enter the PAC Filename and Password.
- 5. For PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC enter the CA certificate filename.
- 6. Click the **OK** button then the **Commit** button.
- 7. When the device attempts to connect to the network, a sign-on screen is displayed.
- 8. Enter the Username and Password. Click the OK button.

SDC Credentials	×
User:	
ОК	Cancel

Figure 4-9 Sign-On Screen

- 9. Verify the device is authenticated by reviewing the **Status** tab. When the device is property configured, the Status tab indicates the device is Authenticated and the method used.
- 10. The sign-on screen is displayed after a reboot for each of the listed protocols.
- *Note:* Complete details are provided in the appropriate Summit Wireless Security section following in this chapter.

If a user enters invalid credentials and clicks **OK**, the device associates but does not authenticate. The user is again prompted to enter credentials.

If the user clicks the **Cancel** button, the device does not associate. The user is not prompted again for credentials until the device is rebooted, the radio is disabled then enabled, the **Reconnect** button on the Diags tag is clicked or the profile is modified and the **Commit** button is clicked.

Summit Wireless Security

Use the instructions in this section to complete the entries on the **Profile** tab according to the type of wireless security used by the network. The instructions that follow are the minimum required to successfully connect to a network. Your system may require more parameters than are listed in these instructions. Please see your system administrator for complete information about your network and its wireless security requirements.

To begin the configuration process:

- On the Main tab, click the Admin Login button and enter the password.
- LXE recommends editing the default profile with the parameters for your network. Select the Default profile from the pull down menu.

Summit Client Utility 🛛 🔋 💶 🗙
Main Profile Status Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default SDC
New Rename Delete Scan
Radio:
SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power
Encryption: EAP Type:
None 💌 None 💌
WEP keys/PSKs Credentials
Save Changes: Commit
Exit

Figure 4-10 Default Profile

• Make any desired parameter changes as described in the applicable following section determined by network security type and click the **Commit** button to save the changes.

Be sure to click the **Commit** button after all changes have been made.

No Security

To connect to a wireless network with no security, make sure the following profile options are used:

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to None
- Set Encryption to None
- Set Auth Type to Open

Summit Client Utility 🛛 🔋 🗖 🗙
Main Profile Status Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default
New Rename Delete Scan
Radio:
SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power
Encryption: EAP Type:
None 💌 None 💌
WEP keys/PSKs Credentials
Save Changes: Commit
Exit

Figure 4-11 No Security

Once configured, click the **Commit** button. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

WEP

To connect using WEP, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to None
- Set Encryption to Manual WEP
- Set Auth Type to Open

Summit Client Utility	? _ 🗆 ×
Main Profile Status Di	ags Global
Edit Profile: Default	SDC
New Rename Delete	s Scan
Radio:	
SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	
Encryption: EAP Typ	ie:
Manual WEP 💌 None	V
WEP keys/PSKs Cred	entials
Save Changes: Co	mmit
	Exit

Figure 4-12 WEP Encryption

Click the **WEP keys/PSKs** button.

WEP K	ey Entry	×
Enter 1 OR ent	0 or 26 Hex digits (A-F, 0-9) er 5 or 13 ASCII characters.	
Tx Key		_
• 1	1234546789	
O 2		
Оз		
O 4		
	OK Cancel	

Figure 4-13 WEP Keys

Valid keys are 10 (for 40 bit encryption) or 26 (for 128 bit encryption) hexadecimal characters. Enter the key(s) and click **OK**.

Once configured, click the **Commit** button. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

LEAP without WPA Authentication

To use LEAP (without WPA) make sure the following profile options are used:

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to LEAP
- Set Encryption to Auto WEP
- Set Auth Type as follows:
 - If the Cisco/CCX certified AP is configured for open authentication, set the Auth Type radio parameter to Open.
 - If the AP is configured for network EAP only, set the Auth Type radio parameter to LEAP.

Please see "WPA/LEAP" later in this section to configure the radio for WPA LEAP.

Summit Client Utilit	y ? _ 🗆 🗙
Main Profile St.	atus Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default	SDC
New Rename	Delete Scan
Radio: SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	AP1
Encryption:	EAP Type:
Auto WEP 💌	LEAP 💌
WEP keys/PSKs	Credentials
Save Changes:	Commit
	Exit

Figure 4-14 LEAP Configuration

Please review "Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials", earlier in this chapter.

To use Stored Credentials, click on the **Credentials** button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.

Credential	5	X
User:	user2	
Password:	LXE	
OK		
UK		

Figure 4-15 LEAP Credentials

Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username. Enter the password and click **OK**.

Once configured, click the **Commit** button. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

PEAP/MSCHAP

To use PEAP/MSCHAP, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to PEAP-MSCHAP
- Set Encryption to WPA TKIP
- Set Auth Type to Open

Summit Client Utili	ty 🤗 🖃 🗙
Main Profile St	atus Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default	SDC
New Rename	Delete Scan
Radio: SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	AP1
Encryption:	EAP Type:
WPA TKIP 💌	PEAP-MSCHAF
WEP keys/PSKs	Credentials
Save Changes:	Commit
	Exit

Figure 4-16 PEAP/MSCHAP

Please review "Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials", earlier in this chapter.

Click the **Credentials** button.

- No entries except the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name and Password when connecting to the network.
- For Stored Credentials, User, Password and the CA Certificate Filename must be entered.

Enter these items as directed below.

Credentials	5	×
User:	user2	
Password:	LXE	
CA Cert.:		
Validate server		
ОК	Cance	

Figure 4-17 PEAP/MSCHAP Credentials

Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

Enter the password.

Leave the CA Certificate File Name blank for now.

Click OK then click Commit. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab.

Once successfully authenticated, copy the CA certificate into the directory specified in the Certs Path global variable. Return to the Credentials screen and check the **Validate server** checkbox.

Credentials	;	×	
User:	user2		
Password:	LXE		
CA Cert.:			
Validate server			
ОК	Cancel		

Figure 4-18 PEAP/MSCHAP Certificate Filename

Enter the filename of the certificate.

Click OK then click Commit.

The device should be authenticating the server certificate and using PEAP/MSCHAP for the user authentication.

For information on generating a Root CA certificate, please see "Root CA Certificate" later in this chapter.

Note: The date must be properly set on the device to authenticate a certificate.

PEAP/GTC

To use PEAP/GTC, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to PEAP-GTC
- Set Encryption to WPA TKIP
- Set Auth Type to Open

Summit Client Utility 💦 📮 🗖 🗙		
Main Profile St	atus Diags Global	
Edit Profile: Default	SDC	
New Rename	Delete Scan	
Radio: SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	AP1	
Encryption:	EAP Type:	
WPA TKIP	PEAP-GTC	
WEP keys/PSKs	Credentials	
Save Changes:	Commit	
	Exit	

Figure 4-19 PEAP/GTC

Please review "Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials", earlier in this chapter.

Click the **Credentials** button.

- No entries except the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name and Password when connecting to the network.
- For Stored Credentials, User, Password and the CA Certificate Filename must be entered.

Enter these items as directed below.

Credentials	×
User:	user2
Password:	LXE
CA Cert.:	
🗖 Validate :	server
OK	Cancel

Figure 4-20 PEAP/GTC Credentials

Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

Enter the password.

Leave the CA Certificate File Name blank for now.

Click OK then click Commit. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab.

Once successfully authenticated, copy the CA certificate into the directory specified in the Certs Path global variable. Return to the Credentials screen and check the **Validate server** checkbox.

Credentials	;		×
User:	user2		
Password:	LXE		
CA Cert.:			
🔽 Validate :	server		
ОК		Cancel	

Figure 4-21 PEAP/GTC Certificate Filename

Enter the filename of the certificate.

Click OK then click Commit.

The device should be authenticating the server certificate and using PEAP/MSCHAP for the user authentication.

For information on generating a Root CA certificate, please see "Root CA Certificate" later in this chapter.

Note: The date must be properly set on the device to authenticate a certificate.

WPA/LEAP

To use WPA/LEAP, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to LEAP
- Set Encryption to WPA TKIP
- Set Auth Type to Open

Please see "LEAP" earlier in this section to configure the radio for LEAP without WPA.

Summit Client Utilit	y ? 💶 🗙
Main Profile St.	atus Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default	SDC
New Rename	Delete Scan
Radio: SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	AP1
Encryption:	EAP Type:
WPA TKIP 💌	LEAP 💌
WEP keys/PSKs	Credentials
Save Changes:	Commit
	Exit

Figure 4-22 WPA/LEAP

Please review "Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials", earlier in this chapter.

To use Stored Credentials, click on the **Credentials** button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.

Credentials	×
Username or Domain\Username	
user2	
Password	
LXE	
OK Cancel	I

Figure 4-23 WPA/LEAP Credentials

Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

Enter the password.

Click **OK** then click **Commit**. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

EAP-FAST

To use EAP-FAST, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to EAP-FAST
- Set Encryption to WPA TKIP
- Set Auth Type to Open

The SCU supports EAP-FAST with automatic or manual PAC provisioning. With automatic PAC provisioning, the user credentials, whether entered on the saved credentials screen or the signon screen, are sent to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server must have auto provisioning enabled to send the PAC provisioning credentials to the client device. Please refer to the "LXE Security Primer" for more information on the RADIUS server configuration.

Summit Client Utili	ty ? 💶 🗙
Main Profile St	tatus Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default	SDC
New Rename	Delete Scan
Radio: SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	AP1
Encryption:	EAP Type:
WPA TKIP 💌	EAP-FAST
WEP keys/PSKs	Credentials
Save Changes:	Commit
	Exit

Figure 5-24 EAP-FAST Configuration

For automatic PAC provisioning, once a username/password is authenticated, the PAC information is stored on the computer. The same username/password must be used to authenticate each time. See the note on the next page for more details.

For manual PAC provisioning, the PAC filename and Password must be entered.

Please review "Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials", earlier in this chapter.

The entries on the Credentials screen are determined by the type of credentials (stored or sign on) and the type of PAC provisioning (automatic or manual).

Click on the **Credentials** button.

To use Stored Credentials, click on the **Credentials** button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials with automatic PAC provisioning as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.

Credentials	5	×
User:	User2	
Password:	LXE	
PAC Filenam	e:	
PAC Passwo	rd:	
ОК		Cancel

Figure 5-25 EAP-FAST Credentials

To use Sign-On credentials:

• Do not enter a User and Password as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.

To use Stored Credentials:

- Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.
- Enter the password.

To use Automatic PAC Provisioning:

• No additional entries are required.

To use manual PAC Provisioning:

- Enter the PAC Filename and PAC Password.
- The PAC file must be copied to the directory specified in the Certs Path global variable. The PAC file must not be read only.

Tap **OK** then tap **Commit**. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

Note: When using Automatic PAC Provisioning, once authenticated, there is a file stored in the \System directory with the PAC credentials. If the username is changed, that file must be deleted. The filename is **autoP.00.pac**.

WPA PSK

To connect using WPA/PSK, make sure the following profile options are used:

- Enter the SSID of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set EAP Type to None
- Set Encryption to WPA PSK
- Set Auth Type to Open

Summit Client Utilit	y ? 💶 🛛
Main Profile Sta	atus Diags Global
Edit Profile: Default	SDC
New Rename	Delete Scan
Radio:	
SSID Client Name Power Save Tx Power	AP1
Encryption:	EAP Type:
WPA PSK 💽	None 💌
WEP keys/PSKs	Credentials
Save Changes:	Commit
	Exit

Figure 4-26 WPA/PSK Encryption

Click WEP keys/PSKs button.



Figure 4-27 PSK Entry

This value can be 64 hex characters or an 8 to 63 byte ASCII value. Enter the key and click OK.

Once configured, click the **Commit** button. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the Main tab. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

EAP-TLS for Summit

EAP-TLS requires the Summit active profile be set to ThirdPartyConfig on the Main tab. For more details, please see "Wireless Zero Config Utility and the Summit Radio", earlier in this chapter.

Use the flowing instructions for the Microsoft Wireless Network Configuration Utility to enable EAP-TLS.

To start configuring the wireless connection, click on the icon in the system tray.



Figure 4-28 Wireless Network System Tray Icon

The Wireless Network Connection screen appears.

^{((†))} Wireless Network Connection	2	×
Network Tasks	Choose a wireless network	
😴 Refresh network list	Click an item in the list below to connect to a wireless network in range or to get more information.	
Set up a wireless network for a home or small office	(() WiFi2 Security-enabled wireless network 00	00
Related Tasks	((@)) WiFi1	
Learn about wireless networking	Security-enabled wireless network	10
Change the order of preferred networks		
Settings		

Figure 4-29 Wireless Network Connections

Click the Change advanced settings link.

🕹 Wireless Network Connection Properties 🔋 🏾 🔋
General Wireless Networks Advanced
Connect using:
Cisco Systems 350 Series PCMCIA Configure
This connection uses the following items:
Client for Microsoft Networks File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks G G Packet Scheduler F NWLink NetBIOS
Install Uninstall Properties
Allows your computer to access resources on a Microsoft network.
 Show icon in notification area when connected Notify me when this connection has limited or no connectivity
0K Cancel

Figure 4-30 Connection Properties, General Tab

To configure the wireless radio networks, click the Wireless Networks tab.

L. Wireless Network Connection Properties	?	×
General Wireless Networks Advanced		
Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings		
Available networks:		
To connect to, disconnect from, or find out more information about wireless networks in range, click the button below.		
View Wireless Networks		
Preferred networks: Automatically connect to available networks in the order listed below: Move up Move down		
Add <u>H</u> emove Properties	_	
configuration. Advanced		
OK Can	cel	

Figure 4-31 Connection Properties, Wireless Networks Tab

Make sure the **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** box is checked. WPA/LEAP is the exception and this box should not be checked when using WPA/LEAP.

To add a new wireless network click the Add button.

Wireless network propertie	25 ? X	
Association Authentication	Connection	
Network <u>n</u> ame (SSID):	peap1	
Wireless network key		
This network requires a key for the following:		
Network <u>A</u> uthentication:	WPA	
Data encryption:	TKIP	
Network <u>k</u> ey:		
Confirm network key:		
Key inde <u>x</u> (advanced):		
	n me awonavisariy	
This is a <u>c</u> omputer-to-co	mputer (ad hoc) network; wireless	
access points are not us		
	OK Cancel	

Figure 4-32 Wireless Network Properties, Association Tab

Enter the SSID in the Network Name (SSID) text box.

Select **WPA** from the **Network Authentication** pull down list. Select **TKIP** from the **Data Encryption** pull down list.

To configure authentication, click the Authentication tab at the top of the screen.

EAP-TLS Configuration

To authenticate using the EAP-TLS protocol you will need a user certificate with the private key. Once you have the user certificate, run the certificate installer from the control panel. The Microsoft supplicant is used. It does not matter if the Cisco supplicant is installed or not.

Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the VX5 computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication may fail.

User Certificate

If the VX5 was used to request the user certificate, it may have been installed by the CA. To check if a correct user certificate is installed:

- 1. Navigate to Start | Run and type mmc.
- 2. Select File | Add/Remove Snap-in.
- 3. Click the **Add** button.
- 4. Click Certificates, click the Add button and choose My User Account.
- 5. Click Finish | Close | OK.
- 6. Expand Certificates Current User and Personal
- 7. Click Certificates
- 8. The user certificate is shown in the right pane, if installed.

🚡 Certificates - [Console Root\Certificates -	Curren	t User\Personal\Cer	ificates]	_ 🗆 ×
🚡 Eile Action View Favorites Window	<u>H</u> elp			_ & ×
← → 🗈 📧 💼 🔮 🖳 🔗				
Console Root		Issued To 🛛 🛆	Issued By	Expiration Date
🖻 🐻 Certificates - Current User		🔛 VX5User1	johndoe	2/2/2007
Personal				
Certificates				
Trusted Root Certification Authorities				
🗄 🖳 Enterprise Trust				
🗄 📄 Intermediate Certification Authorities				
🕀 📄 Active Directory User Object				
🕀 💼 Trusted Publishers				
😟 💼 Untrusted Certificates				
😟 💼 🛅 Third-Party Root Certification Authoritie	s 💻			
🗄 💼 Trusted People				
🗈 💼 Certificate Enrollment Requests	•	•		Þ
Personal store contains 1 certificate.				

Figure 4-33 Certificates

If there is no user certificate refer to "Installing a Root CA Certificate" earlier in this chapter.

Setting EAP/TLS Parameters

Set the Wireless Network Connection Properties per instructions in "Wireless Network Configuration" earlier in this chapter.

peap1 properties	? ×
Association Authentication	Connection
Network <u>n</u> ame (SSID):	peap1
Wireless network key	
This network requires a k	ey for the following:
Network Authentication:	WPA 💌
Data encryption:	TKIP
Network <u>k</u> ey:	
Confirm network key:	
Key inde <u>y</u> (advanced):	1 == or me automatically
This is a computer-to-co access points are not us	mputer (ad hoc) network; wireless sed
	OK Cancel

Figure 4-34 Wireless Network Association

Click the **Authentication** tab.

ap1 prope	rties		? >
Association	Authentication	Connection	
Select this wireless Et	option to provide hemet networks.	authenticated netw	ork. access for
💌 <u>E</u> nable	IEEE 802.1x aut	hentication for this r	etwork.
EAP type:	Smart Card or o	other Certificate	•
			Properties
 Authen availab Authen unavail 	ticate as <u>c</u> ompute le ticate as guest w able	er when computer in hen user or compute	Properties formation is er information is

Figure 4-35 Wireless Network Authentication

Choose Smart Card or other Certificate in the EAP type drop down box.

Make sure the **Authenticate as computer when computer information is available** check box is checked. Make sure the **Authenticate as guest when user or computer is unavailable** check box is not checked.

Click the **Properties** button.

Smart Card or other Certificate Properties ? 🗙
_When connecting:
◯ Use my <u>s</u> mart card
Use a certificate on this computer
Use simple certificate selection (Recommended)
└── Validate server certificate
Connect to these servers:
Trusted Prest Cestification Automitica
Autoridad Cartificadora do la Acceleration Nacional del Notario
Autoridad Certificadora del Colegio Nacional de Notaliat
Baltimore FZ by DST
Belgacom E-Trust Primary CA
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class A
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class B
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Root
Vi <u>e</u> w Certificate
Use a different user name for the connection
OK Cancel

Figure 4-36 Smart Card or Certificate Properties

Click the **Use a certificate on this computer** button and check **Use simple certificate selection** box, as shown above.

Do not check the **Validate server certificate** box. This allows the user to be authenticated as the first step.

When the user certificate successfully authenticates, come back to this screen and check the **Validate server certificate** box, as described in the next section.

Click the **OK** button to dismiss the configuration screens.

When the radio re-connects the user should be authenticated with the user certificate.

If the user does not authenticate check the user certificate and the date on the computer again.

Validating the Server Certificate

Navigate to the Authentication tab of the Wireless Network Settings screen as described in "Wireless Network Connections".

Click the **Properties** button.

When connecting: Use my gmat card Use a certificate on this computer Use simple certificate selection (Recommended)
 ✓ Use my smart card ✓ Use a certificate on this computer ✓ Use simple certificate selection (Recommended) ✓ Validate server certificate
 Use a certificate on this computer Use simple certificate selection (Recommended) Validate server certificate
Use a genuicate on rhis computer I Use simple certificate selection (Recommended) I Validate server certificate
Validate server certificate
Validate server certificate
Connect to these servers:
Trusted <u>R</u> oot Certification Authorities:
🔲 NetLock Kozjegyzoi (Class A) Tanusitvanykiado 📃 🔺
🔲 NetLock Uzleti (Class B) Tanusitvanykiado
PTT Post Root CA
RFCertTestCA
🔲 🗖 Saunalahden Serveri CA 📃 🔄
Saunalahden Serveri CA
Secure Server Certification Authority
SecureNet CA Class A
Vi <u>e</u> w Certificate
Use a <u>different user name for the connection</u>
OK Cancel

Figure 4-37 Validating Server Certificate

Check the Validate server certificate box.

Choose the root CA name in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities list box.

Uncheck the Connect to these servers box.

Click **OK** to dismiss the configuration screens.

The radio re-starts with the new parameters and validates the server CA certificate.

Finally navigate back to the properties configuration screen and check the **Connect to these** servers box.

Smart Card or other Certificate Properties ? ×
When connecting:
O Use my smart card
Use a certificate on this computer
✓ Use simple certificate selection (Recommended)
Validate server certificate
Connect to these servers:
Trusted Root Certification Authorities:
🔲 🔲 NetLock Kozjegyzoi (Class A) Tanusitvanykiado 📃 📃
NetLock Uzleti (Class B) Tanusitvanykiado
PTT Post Root CA
RFCertTestCA
Saunalahden Serveri CA
Saunalahden Serveri CA
Secure Server Certification Authority
SecureNet LA Class A
Vi <u>e</u> w Certificate
Use a different user name for the connection
OK Cancel

Figure 4-38 Connect to Servers

Type the exact name of the ACS server certificate if known. If it is unknown leave the text field blank.

Click **OK** to dismiss the configuration screens.

The radio will re-start with the new parameters and validate the server certificate.

A message box will appear asking if the server certificate is the correct certificate as shown below.

Validate Server Certi	ficate	
You have reached se	rver named:	
I estoerv	and all OK to an	and a state of the
mana and a conect se	IVEL, CICK UN to COL CANCEL to drop th	nect and you will not see this
message again. Cilor	CANCEL to drop in	e connection.
		View Server Certificate
		0.1.1
	UK	Lancel

Figure 4-39 Validate Servers Confirmation

nart	Card or other Certificate Properties
_Whe	en connecting:
0	Use my <u>s</u> mart card
۲	Use a <u>c</u> ertificate on this computer
	Use simple certificate selection (Recommended)
- V 1	/alidate server certificate
	Connect to these servers:
	TestServ
Tru	sted <u>R</u> oot Certification Authorities:
	NetLock Kozjegyzoi (Class A) Tanusitvanykiado 📃 🔺
	NetLock Uzleti (Class B) Tanusitvanykiado
빌븝	PTT Post Root CA
	HFLert I estLA
티봄	Saunalahden Serveri LA
티문	Saunalanden Serveri LA Sasura Caruta Cartification Authoritu
IH	Secure Server Certification Authority
님님	
	Vi <u>e</u> w Certificate
— 11.	
U U 8	e a different user name for the connection

Click **OK** and the VX5 fills in the correct name of the server certificate in the text field left blank above.

Figure 4-40 Connect to Server

Cisco Radio

Configuration

Note: For more information on configuring the Cisco radio, select the "Help" item from the menu bar or click on the "Help" icon. For details on ACU features not described in this section, please refer to the online help.

To access the configuration utility, select **Programs** | **Cisco Aironet** | **Aironet Client Utility** (**ACU**) from the Microsoft Windows Start menu.



Figure 4-41 Cisco Aironet Client Utility

If profiles have already been created, a profile can be selected by clicking on the Select Profile icon.

Select Profile	×
Use Selected Profile Profile1	
Use Auto Profile Selection C <u>Manage</u>	
Use Another Application to Configure My Wireless Settings	
<u>DK</u> <u>Cancel</u> Apply <u>H</u> elp]

Figure 4-42 Cisco Profile Selection Screen

There are two ways to select an active profile:

- Select "Use Selected Profile" and specify the profile name to use.
- Select "Use Auto Profile Selection". A profile is selected from the profiles set up to be included in auto selection. The name of the selected profile is displayed in the text box. If the network adapter loses association for more than 10 seconds (default), then another profile marked for auto selection is chosen. As long as the adapter remains associated or reassociates within 10 seconds (default), the selected profile does not change. To change profiles, you must use the "Use Selected Profile" option.

If using automatic profile selection, click on the Manage button to access the profile selection management screen. Highlight an available profile name and click **<<Add** to add it to the auto selection list. To remove a profile from automatic selection, highlight the profile name and click **Remove>>**.

Auto Profile Sel	ection Management			×
	Auto Selected Profiles		Available Profiles	
High Priority		<< Add	Profile1 Profile2 Profile3	
4. V		Remove >>		
Low Priority				
	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	Apply	<u>H</u> elp



More details on the Profile Manager are available in Cisco's online help.

To create a new profile, access the Profile Manager screens by selecting **Commands** | **Profile Manager** or clicking on the "Profile Manager" icon.

Profile Manager	×
Profile Management	
Profile1	Add
Profile1	<u>E</u> dit
	<u>R</u> ename
	<u>D</u> elete
Import Export	<u>∐</u> se Defaults
<u> </u>	Apply <u>H</u> elp

Figure 4-44 Cisco Profile Manager Screen

To add a new profile:

- Click the "Add" button
- Enter the profile name and press enter
- Complete the Properties screens for the profile (later in this section)
- Click "OK" or "Apply" to save your profile.

Note: If the profile is configured to use LEAP, it must have a saved username and password to be included in auto profile selection.

You can also edit, rename or apply default values to a profile by selecting the profile name and clicking the appropriate button.

You can use the Import/Export buttons to backup profiles or transfer profiles between computers:

- Import a profile from a selected drive/directory, such as a floppy.
- Export a profile to a selected drive/directory, such as a floppy.

Profile Properties Screens

The Properties screen shows the name of the profile in parenthesis. Each Properties screen contains a specific group of parameters:

- System Parameters Parameters to configure the adapter for the network.
- **RF Network** Parameters controlling the transmission and receiving of RF data.
- Advanced (Infrastructure) Parameters controlling operation in an infrastructure network.
- Advance (Ad Hoc) Parameters controlling operation in an Ad Hoc (peer-to-peer) network.
- **Network Security** Parameters controlling association, authentication and encryption.

350 Series Properties - [Profile1]		×
System Parameters RF Network Ac	Advanced (Infrastructure) Network Security	
Client Name: SSID1: SSID2: SSID3:	VX5 WLAN	
Power Save Mode: © <u>C</u> AM (Constantly Awake © <u>M</u> ax PSP (Max Power S © <u>F</u> ast PSP (Power Save	ke Mode) Savings) e Mode)	5
	OK Cancel H	elp

Figure 4-45 Cisco Properties – System Parameters

The System Parameters tab allows you to set:

- **Client Name** The assigned station name in the table of connected devices. Used for easier identification than the MAC address. Default is "".
- **SSID 1-3** The Service Set Identifier, which must match the SSID of any Access Points that you wish to communicate with. Up to three SSIDs may be specified. The SSID is case sensitive. The default is "" which enables the station to connect to any available network.
- **Power Save Mode** The default is CAM (Constant Awake Mode), which provides the fastest response, but uses the most power. Max PSP provides for maximum power savings, but may cause delays in transmission. Fast PSP provides a compromise between the other settings.
- **Network type** The default is Infrastructure. Infrastructure mode is used to connect to a wired network, such as an Ethernet, via access points. Ad hoc mode is used to connect two or more computers in a small temporary network.

350 Series Properties - [Profile1]	×
System Parameters RF Network Advanced (Ir	nfrastructure) Network Security
Data Rate: Auto Rate Selection	 ✓ Use Short Radio Headers ✓ World Mode ✓ Scan For A Better Access Point
Channel: 6 (2437 MHz)	When Adapter Has Been Associated For At Least 10 Seconds And Signal Strength Is Less Than 40
Transmit Power: 100 mW	Clear Channel Assessment: Carrier/Correlation (Car/Cc
Data Retries: 16	Fragment Threshold: 2312
1 128	256 2312
	OK Cancel Help

Figure 4-46 Cisco Properties – RF Network

The RF Network Tab allows you to set:

- **Data Rate** The higher the transmit rate, the greater the throughput, but the range is decreased. Auto Rate Selection uses the highest transmit rate whenever possible, but uses the slower rates as necessary. Auto Rate Select is the default.
- Use Short Radio Headers Selecting this checkbox allows the adapter to use short radio headers. If any clients associated with an access point are using long headers, then all clients must use long headers even when this box is checked. Short radio headers improve throughput performance. Long radio headers ensure compatibility with clients and access points that do not support short headers. The default is to use short radio headers.
- World Mode Selecting this checkbox enables the adapter to adopt the maximum power level and frequency range of the access point to which it is associated (provided the Access Point is configured for World Mode). This parameter is available only in Infrastructure mode. The default is disabled.
- Scan For A Better Access Point When selected, if the associated Access Point's signal becomes low, this option allows the adapter to search for a better Access Point and switch to that Access Point. The default is selected. The time period of association before scanning and the signal strength can be configured. LXE recommends 10 seconds for the association time before scanning and 40% for the signal strength.
- **Channel** The default is 6. The channel selected must match the Access Point (Infrastructure mode) or the other computers (Ad Hoc mode).
- **Transmit Power** The default is 100 mW. Higher transmit power drains batteries faster.
- **Data Retries** The number of times a packet is to be resent if the transmission is not successful. The default is 16.

• **Fragment Threshold** – The threshold above which a packet is split up. Only the affected part of a fragmented message must be resent if a problem occurs. However, smaller fragment size slows transmission. The default is 2312.

350 Series Properties - [Profile1]	×
System Parameters RF Network Advanced (Infrastru	cture) Network Security
Antenna Mode (Receive): © Diversity (Both) © <u>P</u> rimary Antenna Only © <u>S</u> econdary Antenna Only	Antenna Mode (Transmit): © Diversity (Both) © Primary Antenna Only © Secondary Antenna Only
Specified Access Point 1: Specified Access Point 2: Specified Access Point 3: Specified Access Point 4:	
RTS Threshold: 2312	RTS Retry Limit: 16
☑ Enable <u>R</u> adio Management Support	
	OK Cancel Help

Figure 4-47 Cisco Properties – Advanced (Infrastructure)

Advanced (infrastructure) Tab allows you to set:

- Antenna Mode (Receive and Transmit) The default is Diversity (Both). When this mode is selected, the radio uses the stronger signal from the two antenna ports. If only one antenna port is used, select the appropriate option.
- **Specified Access Point (1-4)** When an Access Point is specified (by MAC address) the radio attempts to connect with it first. If the specified Access Point is not found, the radio then attempts to connect to any other Access Point. The default is "".
- **RTS Threshold** The size of data packet for which the low-level RF protocol issues an RTS packet. Smaller packets use more bandwidth, but allow for faster recovery from interference or data collisions. The default is 2312.
- **RTS Retries** The number of times the radio re-sends the RTS packet if a CTS is not received. The default is 16.

350 Series Properties - [Profile1]	×
System Parameters RF Network Advanced (Ad Hoc)	Network Security
Antenna Mode (Receive): © Diversity (Both) © <u>P</u> rimary Antenna Only © <u>S</u> econdary Antenna Only	Antenna Mode (Transmit): © Diversity (Both) © Primary Antenna Only © Secondary Antenna Only
RTS Threshold: 2312	RTS Retry Limit: 16
Wake Duration (Kus): 5	Beacon Period (Kus): 100

Figure 4-48 Cisco Properties – Advanced (Ad Hoc)

Advanced (Ad Hoc) Tab allows you to set:

- Please see the figure titled "Cisco Properties Advanced (Infrastructure)" for descriptions of parameters not mentioned below.
- Wake Duration Specifies the amount of time after a beacon that the adapter stays awake to receive a traffic indicator message, which is sent to keep the adapter awake until the next beacon.
- **Beacon Period** Specifies the duration between beacons, which are used to help clients find each other in Ad Hoc mode.

Encryption

0 Series Prope	rties - [Profile1]		×
System Paramete	ers RF Network Advanced (Infras	ructure) Network Security	
Network Aut	hentication btected Access (WPA)		
 None LEAP Host Ba 	sed EAP (802.1x)	Configure LEAP	
E Allow Fa	st Roaming (CCKM) sociation to both WPA, and non-WPA	authenticators	
- Data Encrypt	ion		
C None	Static WEP	Static WEP Keys	
C TKIP	O Dynamic WEP sociation to Mixed Cells		
Access Poin	Authentication:		
🖲 Open	C Shared Key	Defaults	;
		OK Cancel He	ip:

Figure 4-49 Cisco Properties – Network Security

The Network Security Tab allows you to set several security features. First, select the **Network Security Type.** Valid options include:

- Select "None" in the top two boxes for no security.
- Select "None" and check "Static WEP" to use static WEP. Click the **Static WEP Keys...** button to configure the keys.
- Select "LEAP" and click on **Configure LEAP...** to use LEAP.
Static WEP

Already	Tr	ansmit Keu			WEP K	ley Size
Jet :	WEP Key 1:	° –			ē	0
Г	WEP Key 2:	0			•	0
Г	WEP Key 3:	0			•	0
Г	WEP Key 4:	0			•	0
Kevl	Entrv Method:	•	Hexadecimal	(0-9, A-F)	O ASC	ll Text

Figure 4-50 Cisco Properties – Static WEP

To enter a static WEP key:

- Select "Hexadecimal" or "ASCII Text".
 - Hexadecimal the WEP key contains hexadecimal characters (0-9, A-F).
 - ACII Text the WEP key contains ASCII text, including alpha characters, numbers and punctuation marks.
- Select 40 or 128 Key size.
 - 40 bit keys consist of 10 hexadecimal or 5 ASCII text characters.
 - 128 bit keys consist of 26 hexadecimal or 13 ASCII text characters.
- When setting more than one WEP key, the keys must be assigned in the same order on all devices.
- Click on "Transmit Key" to the left of the key used to transmit packets. Only one WEP key can be selected as the transmit key.

When a WEP Key has been set, the Already Set box is checked and the WEP key is not displayed on screen.

LEAP

Note: To use LEAP with WPA, please see LEAP/WPA Configuration later in this chapter.

To enable LEAP, select LEAP from the Network Security Type Box. Then click the **Configure LEAP**... button. When LEAP is selected, Static WEP is disabled and Dynamic WEP is enabled automatically. The LEAP Settings screen is displayed.

LEAP Settings
LEAP User Name and Password Settings
• Use Temporary User Name and Password
Use Windows User Name and Password
Automatically Prompt for LEAP User Name and Password
O Manually Prompt for LEAP User Name and Password
C Use Saved User Name and Password
User Name:
Password:
Confirm Password:
Domain:
Include Windows Logon Domain with User Name
No Network Connection Unless User Is Logged In
LEAP Authentication Timeout Value (seconds): 90
Defaults DK Cancel Help

Figure 4-51 Cisco Properties – LEAP Settings

LEAP allows a Temporary or Saved User Name and Password. The Temporary User Name and Password can be set as follows:

- Use the Windows User Name and Password and start authentication automatically.
- Automatically prompt for the User Name and Password and start LEAP authentication automatically.
- Manually start the LEAP authentication process, which prompts for the User Name and Password.

The Saved User Name and Password is set as follows:

- Enter a user name and password.
- Re-enter the password
- Specify a domain name, if desired.

Additional options include:

- Include Windows Logon Domain with user Name Used to pass the Windows login domain along with the user name in an environment with multiple domains.
- No Network Connection Unless User is Logged In Forces the client adapter to disassociate after you log off so another user cannot access the network without entering a user name and password.

• LEAP Authentication Timeout Value – The amount of time (in seconds) before a LEAP Authentication is considered failed. An error message is then displayed. The range is 10 to 300 seconds. The default is 90.

Diagnostics

To access the configuration utility, select **Commands** | **Link Status Meter** or click on the "Link Status Meter" icon.



Figure 4-52 Cisco Link Status Meter

The Link Status Meter shows the name of the associated Access Point, if a name has been assigned. The MAC address of the Access Point is also shown.

Scales ranging from 0 to 100% rate both the received signal strength and quality. The meter shows. The Link Quality is based on the strength and quality of the signal:

- Over 75% Excellent
- Over 40% Good
- Over 20% Fair
- Under 20% Poor

If a problem is suspected, load the Aironet Client Utility as described in the previous section. The "Commands" menu contains several items that may be useful:

- Statistics Both receive and transmit statistics are displayed
- Status List values for radio parameters and displays information about the current Link Quality.
- Link Test Tests the performance of the radio with an Access Point (specified by IP Address).
- Site Survey Monitors the signal strength, beacons received, link speed and link quality.

Updating Firmware

Cisco firmware can be updated manually or automatically.

- To manually update the radio card's firmware, click on the Load Firmware icon on the main Cisco screen. Browse to the location of the desired firmware.
- To automatically load new firmware when a new radio driver is installed, click on the Preferences icon on the main Cisco screen. Make sure the checkbox for "Automatically load new firmware when NDIS driver is updated" is checked.

Aironet Client Utility Preferences	×
Screen Update Timer (seconds between updates):	
Faster 1 Slower	
Status Bar Options: Display Seconds on Clock	
Signal Strength Display Units:	
Link Status Meter Options:	
C Show History	
☑ Automatically Load New Firmware When NDIS Driver Is Updated	
Allow Non-Administrator Users to Save Profiles to the Registry	
Defaults DK Cancel Help	

Figure 4-53 Cisco Preferences

WPA for the Cisco Radio



Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is only available on VX5's equipped with the Microsoft Windows XP operating system.

LXE recommends the VX5 have Windows XP Service Pack 2 (SP2) installed. Although Microsoft patch #Q815485 also provides WPA functionality with previous versions of Windows XP, this version was not tested by LXE. All configuration examples shown in this section are from a VX5 with SP2 installed.



Please refer to the "LXE Security Primer" to prepare the Authentication Server and Access Point for VX5 communication.

System Requirements

To support Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), the VX5 must be equipped as follows:

- Windows XP SP2
- Cisco 350 radio card

The LXE VX5 computer supports WPA and all authentications. The Microsoft supplicant and Cisco supplicants are used separately or together to provide support for the different authentications.

WPA support was added to Microsoft XP with SP2. Prior to SP2 there was a patch available that would add WPA support. This document will show configuration of Windows XP with SP2 installed. Most of the configuration is done with the Microsoft Wireless Configuration tool. However for WPA/GTC the Cisco supplicant (ACU) must be installed and configured to allow Microsoft to configure the Cisco radio. Additionally WPA/LEAP requires the Cisco supplicant and configuration tool.

Installing Radio drivers

How much of the LXE released Cisco drivers/tools should be installed depends on what authentication protocol is to be configured.

- Cisco PEAP should not be installed if using PEAP/MSCHAP.
- Cisco PEAP must be installed if using PEAP/GTC.
- For all other authentications (LEAP, EAP-TLS, WPA-PSK) it does not matter if Cisco PEAP is installed or not.

To determine if Cisco PEAP is installed or to change the installation, follow the instructions below.

Checking for the Cisco PEAP Supplicant

With a Cisco radio installed open the Wireless network properties as described in "Wireless Network Configuration", earlier in this chapter. With the Authentication tab selected check the text in the EAP type drop down box. Refer to the following figures to determine if Cisco PEAP is installed.

Wireless network properties	?X Wireless network properties ?X
Association Authentication Connection	Association Authentication Connection
Select this option to provide authenticated network access for wireless Ethernet networks.	Select this option to provide authenticated network access for wireless Ethernet networks.
Enable IEEE 802.1x authentication for this network	☑ Enable IEEE 802.1x authentication for this network
EAP type: Protected EAP (PEAP)	EAP type: PEAP
Propertie	Properties
Authenticate as computer when computer information is available	Authenticate as <u>c</u> omputer when computer information is available
Authenticate as guest when user or computer information is unavailable	Authenticate as guest when user or computer information is unavailable
OK Car	ncel OK Cancel
Cisco PEAP Not Installed	Cisco PEAP Installed

Figure 4-54 Determining Cisco Installed Components

If the Cisco installation is correct, continue with the authentication configuration. If it is not correct, continue with the next section.

Installing/Uninstalling the Cisco PEAP Supplicant

To install or uninstall Cisco PEAP navigate to **Start | Control Panel | Add Remove Programs** on the VX5 computer.

🐻 Add or Ren	nove Programs			_ 🗆 ×
5	Currently installed programs:	Show up <u>d</u> ates	Sort by: Name	
C <u>h</u> ange or Remove	📇 BC-Wedge		Size	0.27MB
Programs	碍 Cisco Aironet Installation Wizard			
- S	To change this program or remove it from your compute	r, click Change/Remove.	Chang	e/Remove
Add <u>N</u> ew Programs	🛃 Fujitsu Touch Panel (USB)		Size	0.61MB
1	🕮 Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1			
	🔀 S3Display			
Add/Remove Windows	🔀 S3Gamma2			
Components	🔀 S3Info2			
6.	🗭 Twister and Utilities		Size	0.11MB
	🛃 VIA Audio Driver Setup Program		Size	0.02MB
Set Pr <u>o</u> gram Access and Defaults				

Figure 4-55 Access Cisco Installation Wizard

Choose the Cisco Aironet Installation Wizard.

Click the **Change/Remove** button.

Cisco Aironet Wireles	s LAN Client Adapter Installation Wizard 1.2.08
L L	This wizard will help you to install compatible drivers, client utilities, firmware, and security modules.
	C Express Installation/Upgrade (recommended)
	Custom Installation/Upgrade
(C Uninstall All Components
	Next Cancel Help

Figure 4-56 Cisco Installation Wizard

To install Cisco PEAP, click the Custom Installation/Upgrade button.

To uninstall Cisco PEAP click the **Uninstall All Components** button. Once everything is uninstalled, re-install the driver without Cisco PEAP.

Click the Next button.



Figure 4-57 Cisco Component Installation

To install Cisco PEAP:

• Expand the Security Modules and check the PEAP box.

To install without Cisco PEAP:

• Expand the Security Modules and uncheck the PEAP box.

Click the next button until the supplicant loads.

Once the new supplicant installs or uninstalls you will be prompted to reboot the VX5.



Figure 4-58 Reboot Prompt

Wireless Network Configuration Utility

Use the flowing instructions for the Microsoft Wireless Network Configuration Utility for all authentication protocols except WPA/LEAP.

To start configuring the wireless connection, click on the icon in the system tray.



Figure 4-59 Wireless Network System Tray Icon

The Wireless Network Connection screen appears.

^{((†))} Wireless Network Connection	2		×
Network Tasks	Choose	e a wireless network	
😴 Refresh network list	Click an iter information	m in the list below to connect to a <u>wi</u> reless network in range or to get more 1.	
Set up a wireless network for a home or small office	((o))	WiFi2	
	U V	😏 Security-enabled wireless network 🛛 🖓 🖓	
Related Tasks	((o))	WiFi1	
Learn about wireless networking		Security-enabled wireless network	
Change the order of preferred networks			
Change advanced			
settings		Gonnedt]



Click the Change advanced settings link.

Wire	ess Network C	onnection Prop	erties	? >
Genera	I Wireless Netw	vorks Advanced	I	
Conn	ect using:			
	Cisco Systems 3	50 Series PCMCI	۹ [<u>C</u> onfigure
This o	connection uses t	he following item:	:	
	📙 Client for Micr	osoft Networks		
	📇 File and Printe	r Sharing for Mic	osoft Netv	vorks
	📇 QoS Packet S	Scheduler		
	🐨 NWLink NetB	IOS		
	l <u>n</u> stall	<u>U</u> ninstall		Properties
_ Des	cription			
Alle ne	ows your compute work.	er to access resol	irces on a	Microsoft
▼ s	ho <u>w</u> icon in notific	ation area when	connected]
🗹 N	otify <u>m</u> e when this	connection has	limited or n	o connectivity
				1
			UK	Cancel

Figure 4-61 Connection Properties, General Tab

To configure the wireless radio networks, click the Wireless Networks tab.

L Wireless Network Connection P	roperties	? ×
General Wireless Networks Advan	ced	
Use Windows to configure my wit	reless network settings	
Available <u>n</u> etworks:		
To connect to, disconnect from, or about wireless networks in range, o	find out more information click the button below.	
	View Wireless Networks	
Preferred networks: Automatically connect to available below:	Move up	1
Add <u>H</u> emove	Properties	
Learn about <u>setting up wireless network</u> configuration.	work Adyanced	
	OK Car	icel

Figure 4-62 Connection Properties, Wireless Networks Tab

Make sure the **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** box is checked. WPA/LEAP is the exception and this box should not be checked when using WPA/LEAP.

To add a new wireless network click the Add button.

Wireless network properties	. ? ×
Association Authentication	Connection
Network name (SSID):	peap1
Wireless network key	
This network requires a key	y for the following:
Network Authentication:	WPA
Data encryption:	TKIP
Network key:	
Confirm network key:	
Key index (advanced):	1 🚔
The key is provided for	me automatically
This is a <u>computer-to-com</u> access points are not use	iputer (ad hoc) network; wireless ad
	OK Cancel

Figure 4-63 Wireless Network Properties, Association Tab

Enter the SSID in the Network Name (SSID) text box.

Select **WPA** from the **Network Authentication** pull down list. For WPA/PSK see "WPA PSK Configuration", later in this chapter.

Select TKIP from the Data Encryption pull down list.

To configure authentication, click the Authentication tab at the top of the screen.

To continue with the authentication process, please refer to the appropriate section, later in this chapter, for the desired authentication protocol:

- "PEAP/MS-CHAP Configuration"
- "PEAP/GTC Configuration"
- "WPA/LEAP Configuration"
- "EAP-TLS Configuration"
- "WPA/PSK Configuration"

PEAP/MS-CHAP Configuration

The Microsoft supplicant authenticates a user with the PEAP/MS-CHAP protocol. For this protocol, install the Cisco radio driver only (no tools installed).

Note: It is possible to use Microsoft version of PEAP with Cisco installed but this section shows how to configure MS PEAP without Cisco PEAP installed.

Configuring the PEAP/MS-CHAP Supplicant

With the radio parameters configured (see "Wireless Network Configuration" earlier in this chapter), click the **Authentication** tab.

Wireless net	work properties	? ×
Association	Authentication Connection	
Select this wireless Et	option to provide authenticated network access hemet networks.	for
✓ Enable	IEEE 802.1x authentication for this network	
EAP type:	Protected EAP (PEAP)	•
✓ Authen availab	Prop ticate as <u>computer</u> when computer information is le	erties
Authen unavail	ticate as guest when user or computer informatio lable	n is
	ОК	Cancel

Figure 4-64 Wireless Network Properties, Authentication Tab

Set the **EAP type** to **Protected EAP** (**PEAP**). If the text is not exactly as shown, see "Installing/Uninstalling the Cisco PEAP Supplicant" to uninstall the Cisco PEAP supplicant.

Click the **Properties** button.

Protected EAP Properties
When connecting:
☑ Validate server certificate
Connect to these servers:
Trusted Root Certification Authorities:
ABA.ECOM Root CA
🔲 🗖 Autoridad Certificadora de la Asociacion Nacional del Notaria
Autoridad Certificadora del Colegio Nacional de Correduria P.
Baltimore EZ by DST
Belgacom E-Trust Primary CA
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class A
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class B
Do not prompt user to authorize new servers or trusted certification authorities.
Select Authentication Method:
Secured password (EAP-MSCHAP v2)
Enable Fast Reconnect
OK Cancel

Figure 4-65 PEAP Properties

When first configuring and authenticating, do not check **Validate server certificate**. When the server certificate is not validated, this allows the user authentication to be tested. When user authentication is tested and working, come back to this screen and check **Validate server certificate**.

Using the Select Authentication Method drop down box choose Secured password (EAP-MSCHAP v2).

Check the Enable Fast Reconnect box at the bottom of the screen.

Click the **Configure...** button for the MSCHAP configuration.

EAP MSCHAPv2 Properties
When connecting:
Automatically use my Windows logon name and password (and domain if any).
OK Cancel

Figure 4-66 MSCHAP Properties

Configure this box depending on what username and password are used to login to Windows XP and the user credentials for the MSCHAP authentication.

Left unchecked, the VX5 will prompt for a User Name and Password.

Click the OK buttons back to the Wireless Network Properties screen.

The login screen appears for logging into the wireless network.

Enter Credenti	als X
User name:	Username
Password:	****
Logon domain:	
	OK Cancel

Figure 4-67 Login Screen

Server Authentication

To validate the server certificate install the root CA certificate. For instructions, please see "Installing a Root CA Certificate", earlier in this chapter.

Navigate to the Wireless Network Properties configuration screen.

Click the **Authentication** tab then the **Properties** button.

Protected EAP Properties
When connecting:
✓ Validate server certificate
Connect to these servers:
Trusted Root Certification Authorities:
ABA.ECOM Root CA
Autoridad Certificadora de la Asociación Nacional del Notaria
Baltimore EZ by DST
Belgacom E-Trust Primary CA
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class A
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class B
Do not prompt user to authorize new servers or trusted certification authorities.
Select Authentication Method:
Secured password (EAP-MSCHAP v2)
Enable Fast Reconnect
OK Cancel

Figure 4-68 PEAP Properties

Check the Validate server certificate and the root CA in the list box Trusted Root Certificate Authorities.

Do not check the Connect to these servers box.

This will authenticate the root CA only and not the RADIUS server.

If validating the RADIUS server is required check the **Connect to these servers** box and type the exact name of the ACS server certificate.

If that is not known check the box, but leave the text field empty.

Click **OK** to dismiss the configuration boxes.

When the radio connects with the new configuration parameters, a connection message is displayed.

(⁽⁰⁾ Wireless Network Connection 1	×
Click here to process your logon information for the networ peapTest	k
	N .

Figure 4-69 Connection Message Box

Click the message box to process your logon.

/alidate Server Cert	ificate		
You have reached s	erver named:		
If this is the correct s message again. Clic	erver, click OK k CANCEL to d	to connect rop the cor	ct and you will not see this innection.
			View Server Certificate
	01/		

Figure 4-70 Server Certificate Validation

The server sends its certificate and the VX5 displays a message asking if this certificate is the correct one.

If this is the correct certificate click the **OK** button.

'hen conr	ecting:				
🗹 Valida	ite server certi	ficate			
🔽 C <u>o</u> n	hect to these s	ervers:			
Te	stServ				
Trusted	<u>R</u> oot Certificat	ion Authoritie:	;:		
AB/	A.ECOM Root C	A			
🗖 Aut	oridad Certifica	adora de la As	ociacion M	Jacional d	lel Notaria —
	oridad Certifica	adora del Cole	gio Nacio	nal de Co	rreduria P.
Bal	imore EZ by DS	5T			
	jacom E-Trust I	Primary CA			
	M HKT SecureN	let CA Class A			
	M HKT Securely	let CA Class B let CA Deet			
	WIRKT Securen	IBL CA ROOL			┛┣
elect Auti	entication Met	hod:			
iecured p	assword (EAP-	MSCHAP v2)		•	<u>C</u> onfigure.
Enabla	Fast Deconner	·+			

This puts the correct certificate name in the text box for the Protected EAP Properties screen as shown below.

Figure 4-71 PEAP Properties and Server Name

Now the ACS certificate is being validated and configuration is complete.

(1) Wireless Network Connection is now connected	×
Connected to peapTest Signal Strength: Excellent	
	y .,

Figure 4-72 Network Connected Box

When the radio connects with the new parameters, the Network Connected message box is displayed.

PEAP/GTC Configuration

To configure PEAP/GTC (Cisco PEAP) the Cisco PEAP supplicant must be installed. See "installing Radio Drivers" earlier in this chapter to check for the Cisco PEAP supplicant and install if required. This supplicant is from Cisco and licensed to be used only with a Cisco radio.

Configuring the PEAP/GTC Supplicant

Even though the Cisco tools (ACU) are installed, the Microsoft supplicant is used to configure the radio parameters. The Cisco ACU must be configured to allow the Microsoft configuration tools to set the wireless network settings.

Open the Cisco ACU and click the **Set profile** button.

Click the Use Another Application to Configure My Wireless Settings button.

Select Profile	X
Use Selected Profile O test	3
Use Auto Profile Selection O Manage	
Use Another Application to Configure My Wireless Settings 💿	
QK <u>C</u> ancel Apply <u>H</u> elp	

Figure 4-73 Cisco ACU Profile Selection Screen

Click OK.

Configure the Wireless settings per "Wireless Network Configuration", earlier in this chapter.

Click the **Authentication** tab.

Wireless net	work properties			?	x
Association	Authentication Co	onnection			
Select this wireless Etl	option to provide aut nernet networks.	henticated network	access for		
💌 <u>E</u> nable	IEEE 802.1x authen	tication for this netv	vork		
EAP type:	PEAP			•	
			P <u>r</u> opertie	s	
Authen availab	ticate as <u>c</u> omputer w le	hen computer infor	mation is		
Authen unavail	ticate as guest when able	user or computer in	nformation is		
		ОК	Can	cel	

Figure 4-74 Authentication Properties

Set EAP type drop down box to PEAP.

Click the **Properties** button.

EAP Properties
⊻alidate server certificate
Connect only if server name ends with:
Trusted root certificate authority (CA):
Connect only if server is signed by specified trusted root CA
Second Phase EAP Type: Generic Token Card
Always try to resume secure session.
<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

Figure 4-75 PEAP Properties

It is recommended to authenticate a user then to validate the server after user authentication is successful.

Uncheck the Validate server certificate box.

In the Second Phase EAP Type drop down box, choose Generic Token Card.

Uncheck **Always try to resume secure session** box. If checked, this will not authenticate a user when they sign in if the previous authentication is still valid in the ACS server.

Click the **Properties** button.

Generic Token Card Properties
Use Generic Token Card for:
Static Password (Windows NT/2000, LDAP)
One Time Password
Support <u>H</u> ardwareToken
Support Software Toker
Supported <u>Type:</u>
Secure Computing SofToken II 2.0
OK Cancel

Figure 4-76 Generic Token Card Properties

Click the **One Time Password** button.

Check Support Hardware Token to support the RSA SecurID hardware token.

Click **OK** to dismiss all configuration screens.

When the radio re-connects a One Time Password sign-on screen will appear.

One Time Pas	sword	X
User name: Password:	Username *******	
	OK Cancel	

Figure 4-77 One Time Password

Enter the RSA user name and the one time password (OTP) from the hardware token and click **OK**.



Figure 4-78 Wireless Network Connected Message

Validate Server Certificate

Install the Root CA or trusted CA that issued the ACS server certificate. Please see "Installing a Root CA Certificate" earlier in this chapter for instructions.

Navigate to the Wireless Network Settings screen.

Click the Authentication tab then the PEAP Properties box.

Check the Validate server certificate box.

From the drop down box choose the CA Root certificate.

PEAP Properties					
✓ Validate server certificate					
Connect only if server name ends with:					
Irusted root certificate authority (CA):					
TestServCA					
Connect only if server is signed by specified trusted root CA					
Second Phase EAP Type: Generic Token Card Properties					
Always try to resume secure session.					
<u>Q</u> K <u>C</u> ancel					

Figure 4-79 PEAP Properties Certificate Authority

Check the **Connect only if server is signed by specified root CA** box.

Click **OK** to dismiss the configuration screens.

The root CA will be validated only when the radio re-connects with the new wireless parameters in this configuration.

v	alidate server certific	ate			
	Connect only if serv	er name ends	with:		
	TestServCA				
Ī	isted root certificate #	authority (CA):			
T	estServCA				•
	Connect only if serv	ver is signed by	specified (rusted r	oot CA
<u>S</u> econd	Phase EAP Type: 🛛 🛛	Generic Token	Card	•	<u>P</u> roperties
🗌 Alwa	vs try to resume secu	ire session.			

To validate the ACS server certificate navigate back to screen sown below.

Figure 4-80 ACS Server Verification

Check the **Connect only if server name ends with** box.

Enter the name of the server certificate if known.

If it is not known leave the text field blank.

When the radio connects with these parameters, the server sends the server certificate and a message displays asking if this is correct.

If it is correct click **Yes** and the text field will be filled in automatically.

WPA/LEAP Configuration

LEAP is a Cisco proprietary authentication protocol and is not supported by the Microsoft supplicant. To configure the VX5 for WPA/LEAP use the Cisco ACU installed during normal installation of the Cisco radio driver.

Cisco ACU

Start the Cisco ACU by clicking the icon on the desktop or navigate to **Start | Programs | Cisco | ACU**.



Figure 4-81 Cisco ACU

Click on the Profile Manager icon.

Profile Manager		×
leap1	*	Add Edt
jmport	Export	Lielete
	<u>QK</u> ancel	Apply Help

Figure 4-82 Cisco Profile Manager

Type a profile name in the text box and click the Add button.

								1000
3	350 Series Properti	ies - [leap1]						×
	System Parameters	RF Network A	dvanced (Infra:	structur	e) Network Security			
		Client Name:	VX5leap001					
		SSID1:	leaptest					
		SSID2:						
		SSID3:						
			·					
	Power S	ave Mode:		1 [Network Type:			
	• <u>C</u> AM	(Constantly Awał	(e Mode)		🔿 Ad Hoc			
	○ <u>M</u> ax I	PSP (Max Power	Savings)		Infrastructure			
	◯ <u>F</u> ast I	PSP (Power Save	e Mode)					
							<u>D</u> efa	ults
					OK	Cancel		Help

Figure 4-83 System Parameters

Enter a Client Name. You should use a unique name for each VX5.

Type the SSID in the text field **SSID1**.

Click the **Network Security** tab at the top of the screen.

Vetwork Aut	erties - [leap1] rs RF Network Advanced (Infra hentication ptected Access (WPA)	structure] Network Security	
○ None ● LEAP (V ○ Host Ba	/PA) sed EAP (WPA)	Configure LEAP	
Allow Fa	st Hoaming (LUKM) sociation to both WPA and non-WI	A authenticators	
O None • TKIP	Static WEP Dynamic WEP sociation to Mixed Cells	Static WEP Keys	
Access Poin	Authentication:		
Open	C Shared Key	Defaul	ts
		OK Cancel H	elp

Figure 4-84 Network Security

Check the Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) box.

TKIP and **Open** will automatically be checked and the other options grayed out when WPA is checked.

Click the **LEAP** (WPA) button.

Click the **Configure LEAP** button.

LEAP Settings					
LEAP User Name and Password Settings					
Use Temporary User Name and Password					
O Use Windows User Name and Password					
Automatically Prompt for LEAP User Name and Password					
O Manually Prompt for LEAP User Name and Password					
O Use Saved User Name and Password					
User Name:					
Password:					
Confirm Password:					
Domain:					
Include Windows Logon Domain with User Name					
No Network Connection Unless User Is Loaged In					
I CAD Authoritication Timorut Malus (accorde)					
ELMI Mutichication Hindoux Value (seconds).					
Defaults <u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp					

Figure 4-85 LEAP Settings

To automatically prompt the user for a username and password click the **Use Temporary User Name and Password** and **Automatically Prompt for LEAP User Name and Password** buttons.

Depending on the network, you may have to uncheck the **Include Windows Logon Domain with User name** box.

Click OK.

Select Profile X
Use Selected Profile 💿 leap1
Use Auto Profile Selection O Manage
Use Another Application to Configure My Wireless Settings
<u>QK</u> <u>Cancel</u> <u>Apply</u> <u>H</u> elp

Figure 4-86 Select Profile

Click the Select Profile icon from the main ACU screen.

Click the Use Selected Profile button.

Use the drop down box to choose the profile just configured.

Click OK.

The VX5 will associate and then display the sign on screen.

Enter Wireless	Network Password	
	Please enter your LEAP user name and password to log on to the wireless network.	ОК
T		Cancel
User Name:		
Password:		
Log on to:		
Card Name:	Cisco Systems 350 Series PCMCIA Wireless LAN Adapte	er
Profile Name:	leap	

Figure 4-87 LEAP User Name and Password

A sign on status box will display.

LEAP Authentication Status				
Card Name: Profile Name:	Cisco Syst leap1	stems 350 Series PCMCIA Wireless LAN Adapter		
Steps		Status		
 Starting LEAP Aut 	thentication	n Successful		
2. Checking Link Sta	atus	Successful		
3. Renewing IP add	ress	Successful, IP Address 100,100,100,100		
4. Detecting IPX Fra	ime Type	Successful		
5. Finding Domain C	ontroller	Successful		
Shown minimized n	iext time	Cancel		

Figure 4-88 Sign On Status

	M
350 Series Status - Lieap1 J	△
Device	= 350 Series PCMCIA
Serial Number	= AMB00000E0T
Manufacturer	 Cisco Systems, Inc.
Firmware Version	= V5.30.17
Boot Block Version	= V1.50
NDIS Driver Version	= V8.4.17
Default Profile	= test
Lurrent Profile	= test
Using Short Radio Headers	= res
Server Based Authentication	 IEAP Authenticated
Data Encruption Tupe	= TKIP
Authentication Type	= Open
Broadcast Encryption Type	= TKIP
WPA Authentication	= WPA
Fast Roaming	= None
Antenna Selection	 Rx->Diversity Tx->Diversity
Channel Set	= North America
Client Name	= VX5
MAC Address (Factory)	= 00:0D:ED:00:00:00
IP Address	= 10.1.2.115
Lurrent Link Speed	= IIMbps
Data Hate Commit Device Level	= Auto Hate Selection
Ausibble Rever Level	= 100 mW = 1.5.20.20.50.100 mV/
Channel (Frequency)	= 1, 3, 20, 30, 30, 100 mw
channer (nequency)	= 2 (2417 0012)
Status	= Associated
SSID	= TestSSID
Network Type	= Infrastructure
Power Save Mode	= CAM
Associated Access Point Name	= AP1200WPA
Associated Access IP Address	= 100.100.100.100
Associated Access Point MAC	= 00:07:85:00:00:00
Up Time (hh:mm:ss)	= 00:10:19
Current Signal Strength	72%
Current Signal Quality	100%
Overall Link Quality	Good

Once connected, click the **Status** icon at the main ACU screen to show the configuration of the VX5.

Figure 4-89 Cisco Status

EAP-TLS Configuration

To authenticate using the EAP-TLS protocol you will need a user certificate with the private key. Once you have the user certificate, run the certificate installer from the control panel. The Microsoft supplicant is used. It does not matter if the Cisco supplicant is installed or not.

Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the VX5 computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication may fail.

User Certificate

If the VX5 was used to request the user certificate, it may have been installed by the CA. To check if a correct user certificate is installed:

- 1. Navigate to **Start | Run** and type mmc.
- 2. Select File | Add/Remove Snap-in.
- 3. Click the **Add** button.
- 4. Click Certificates, click the Add button and choose My User Account.
- 5. Click Finish | Close | OK.
- 6. Expand Certificates Current User and Personal
- 7. Click Certificates
- 8. The user certificate is shown in the right pane, if installed.

🚡 Certificates - [Console Root\Certificates -	Curren	t User\Personal\Cer	ificates]	_ 🗆 ×
🚡 Eile Action View Favorites Window	<u>H</u> elp			_ & ×
← → 🗈 📧 💼 🔮 🖳 🔗				
Console Root		Issued To 🛛 🛆	Issued By	Expiration Date
🖻 🐻 Certificates - Current User		🔛 VX5User1	johndoe	2/2/2007
Personal				
Certificates				
Trusted Root Certification Authorities				
🗄 🖳 Enterprise Trust				
🗄 📄 Intermediate Certification Authorities				
🕀 📄 Active Directory User Object				
🕀 💼 Trusted Publishers				
😟 💼 Untrusted Certificates				
😟 💼 🛅 Third-Party Root Certification Authoritie	s 💻			
🗄 💼 Trusted People				
🗈 💼 Certificate Enrollment Requests	•	•		Þ
Personal store contains 1 certificate.				

Figure 4-90 Certificates

If there is no user certificate refer to "Installing a Root CA Certificate" earlier in this chapter.

Setting EAP/TLS Parameters

Set the Wireless Network Connection Properties per instructions in "Wireless Network Configuration" earlier in this chapter.

peap1 properties ? 🗙					
Association Authentication	Connection				
Network <u>n</u> ame (SSID):	peap1				
Wireless network key					
This network requires a ke	ey for the following:				
Network Authentication:	WPA				
Data encryption:	TKIP				
Network <u>k</u> ey:					
Confirm network key:					
Key index (advanced): 1 == The key is provided for me automatically					
This is a computerto-computer (ad hoc) network; witeless access points are not used					
	OK Cancel				

Figure 4-91 Wireless Network Association

Click the **Authentication** tab.

peap1 prope	rties			? ×	
Association	Authentication	Connection			
Select this option to provide authenticated network access for wireless Ethernet networks.					
🔽 <u>E</u> nable	IEEE 802.1x auth	nentication for th	nis network		
EAP type:	Smart Card or o	ther Certificate		•	
 ✓ Authen availab Authen unavail 	licate as <u>c</u> ompute le ticate as guest wi able	r when comput	er informatio	P <u>roperties</u> on is nation is	
			ОК	Cancel	

Figure 4-92 Wireless Network Authentication

Choose Smart Card or other Certificate in the EAP type drop down box.

Make sure the **Authenticate as computer when computer information is available** check box is checked. Make sure the **Authenticate as guest when user or computer is unavailable** check box is not checked.

Click the **Properties** button.

Smart Card or other Certificate Properties	×			
When connecting:				
C Use my smart card				
Use a certificate on this computer				
Use simple certificate selection (Recommended)				
☐ <u>V</u> alidate server certificate				
Connect to these servers:				
	1			
Trusted Reat Catification Authorities				
ABA.E.CUM Root LA				
Autoridad Certificadora de la Asociación Nacional del Notariac				
Autoridad Certificadora del Colegio Nacional de Correduna Pu Baltimore EZ hu DST				
Belgacom E-Trust Primary CA				
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class A				
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class B				
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Root				
Vi <u>e</u> w Certificate				
Use a different user name for the connection				
OK Cancel				

Figure 4-93 Smart Card or Certificate Properties

Click the **Use a certificate on this computer** button and check **Use simple certificate selection** box, as shown above.

Do not check the **Validate server certificate** box. This allows the user to be authenticated as the first step.

When the user certificate successfully authenticates, come back to this screen and check the **Validate server certificate** box, as described in the next section.

Click the **OK** button to dismiss the configuration screens.

When the radio re-connects the user should be authenticated with the user certificate.

If the user does not authenticate check the user certificate and the date on the computer again.

Validating the Server Certificate

Navigate to the Authentication tab of the Wireless Network Settings screen as described in "Wireless Network Connections".

Click the **Properties** button.

Smart Card or other Certificate Properties				
When connecting:				
C Use musmart card				
Use my small call				
 Use simple certificate selection (Becommended) 				
✓ Validate server certificate				
Connect to these servers:				
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
Trusted <u>R</u> oot Certification Authorities:				
🔲 🔲 NetLock Kozjegyzoi (Class A) Tanusitvanykiado 📃 📃				
NetLock Uzleti (Class B) Tanusitvanykiado				
PTT Post Root CA				
Connected and Connect Connected and Con				
Saunalahden Serveri LA				
Secure Server Certification Authority				
Secure Server CertainCarton Additional				
View Certificate				
*igvi Celuicate				
Use a different user name for the connection				
OK Cancel				

Figure 4-94 Validating Server Certificate

Check the Validate server certificate box.

Choose the root CA name in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities list box.

Uncheck the Connect to these servers box.

Click **OK** to dismiss the configuration screens.

The radio re-starts with the new parameters and validates the server CA certificate.

Finally navigate back to the properties configuration screen and check the **Connect to these** servers box.

Smart Card or other Certificate Properties				
O Use my smart card				
Use a certificate on this computer				
Use simple certificate selection (Becommended)				
☑ Validate server certificate				
Connect to these servers:				
Trusted <u>B</u> oot Certification Authorities:				
🔲 NetLock Kozjegyzoi (Class A) Tanusitvanykiado 🛛 🔺				
NetLock Uzleti (Class B) Tanusitvanykiado				
PTT Post Root CA				
RFCertTestCA				
🗖 🗖 Saunalahden Serveri CA 🔤				
🗖 Saunalahden Serveri CA				
Secure Server Certification Authority				
SecureNet CA Class A				
Vi <u>e</u> w Certificate				
Use a different user name for the connection				
OK Cancel				

Figure 4-95 Connect to Servers

Type the exact name of the ACS server certificate if known. If it is unknown leave the text field blank.

Click **OK** to dismiss the configuration screens.

The radio will re-start with the new parameters and validate the server certificate.

A message box will appear asking if the server certificate is the correct certificate as shown below.

alidate Server Certificate			
You have reached se	rver named:		
TestServ			
If this is the correct server, click OK to connect and you will not see this			
message again. Click CANCEL to drop the connection.			
		View Server Certificate	
		view Jerver Certificate	
	OK	Cancel	

Figure 4-96 Validate Servers Confirmation

-Wh C	en connecting: Use my smart card		
•	Use a certificate on this computer		
	Use simple certificate selection (Recommended)		
◄	Validate server certificate		
•	Connect to these servers:		
	TestServ		
Tru	isted <u>R</u> oot Certification Authorities:		
🔲 NetLock Kozjegyzoi (Class A) Tanusitvanykiado 🛛 🔺			
NetLock Uzleti (Class B) Tanusitvanykiado			
PTT Post Root LA			
I Saunalahden Serveri C∆			
Ιē	Saunalahden Serveri CA		
	Secure Server Certification Authority		
	SecureNet CA Class A		
•			
	Vi <u>e</u> w Certificate		
_	se a different user name for the connection		
U U			

Click **OK** and the VX5 fills in the correct name of the server certificate in the text field left blank above.

Figure 4-97 Connect to Server

WPA PSK Configuration

Configure the Wireless Network Settings as described in "Wireless Network Configuration", earlier in this chapter.

Vireless network properties					
Association Authentication	Connection				
Network <u>n</u> ame (SSID):	tkip				
Wireless network key					
This network requires a key for the following:					
Network Authentication:	WPA-PSK				
Data encryption:	TKIP				
Network <u>k</u> ey:	•••••				
Confirm network key:	•••••				
Key inde <u>x</u> (advanced):					
The key is provided for me automatically					
This is a computer-to-computer (ad hoc) network; wireless access points are not used					
	OK Cancel				

Figure 4-98 Wireless Properties Association

Change the Network Authentication to WPA-PSK.

Enter an ASCII network key in the Network key text field.

Enter the same key in the **Confirm network key** text field.

There is no server authentication when using WPA-PSK, so no additional configuration is needed.

Symbol Radio

Configuration

Note: For more information on configuring the Symbol radio, click the "?" button available on every Symbol screen.

Symbol radio configuration screens can be accessed by right clicking (60-key keyboard : press <Ctrl> key then touch the screen) on the Symbol icon in the Windows system tray. Select WLAN profiles from the menu to configure the radio.



Figure 4-99 Symbol WLAN Profiles

The first screen of the Mobile Companion shows any existing profiles. Profiles can also be edited or deleted. The Up and Down buttons move the highlighted profile up or down in the list. The order of the profiles (as displayed in the list) corresponds to the order in which the profiles are searched if association with the current profile is lost.



Figure 4-100 Symbol Profile – Mode

The Mode screen provides for the entry of the following information:

- The name of the profile
- **ESS ID** Enter a network card ESS ID in this field. This string can be a maximum of 32 characters and identifies the wireless local area network. The ESS ID of the card is required to match the Access Point ESS ID if the card is to communicate with the access point.
- **Operating Mode** Select Infrastructure to allow the radio to communicate with an Access Point. Select AdHoc to allow the radio to communicate with other radios in a peer-to-peer network. The default is Infrastructure.
- Use the Country pulldown to select the country of operation. When this is selected, the radio uses the country code information compatible with the country code of the access point. Select worldwide if the radio is used with a non-Symbol (or pre AP-4131 model Symbol access point).


Figure 4-101 Symbol Profile – IP Configuration

Use this screen to select between a dynamically assigned IP address (DHCP) or a static address. If a static IP address is selected the following entries are also available on this screen:

- IP Address
- Subnet Mask
- Gateway
- DNS
- WINS

Mobile Companion
Mode Encryption IP Config Power
Radio Transmission Power
Infrastructure: Automatic 💌
Automatic Power Saving Mode
Excellent Network Performance. Uses less battery power.
Ok Cancel

Figure 4-102 Symbol Profile – Power

Use this screen to set the power management properties of the radio card. If automatic power saving mode is not desired, uncheck the checkbox and adjust the sliding scale as desired. The leftmost position uses the least power, but at the expense of network performance. The rightmost position provides the best network performance, but consumes the most power.

Encryption (WEP)

The Symbol profile contains several choices for data encryption.

Note: The card and the Access Point are required to use the same encryption to associate and transmit data. If the Access Point is set to Open System and the card is set to 40-bit or 128-bit encryption, no association (and therefore no data transfer) can occur. Likewise no association occurs if the card is set to Open System and the Access Point is set to 40-bit or 128-bit encryption.

If the Access Point is set to 40-bit and the card is set to 128-bit encryption, the Access Point and card associate, but do not transmit data.

On the Encryption screen, select the desired encryption type:

- **Open System** Select Open System if no packet encryption is desired. Click the OK button to enable this option.
- **40-bit Shared Key algorithm** Select 40-bit encryption, enter a 10 hex digit key in the boxes (there are two five-digit boxes per key) and click the OK button to enable 40-bit encryption. Use the Reset Keys button to clear any entered keys.

Mobile Companion	×
Mode Encryption IP Config Power	
Encryption Algorithm:	
40-bit Shared Key	
©1 O2 O3 O4	
Adapter will use this key 🔽	
RXXXXX RXXXX	
<u>R</u> eset Keys Passkey	
Ok Cancel	

Figure 4-103 Symbol Profile – 40 bit Encryption

• **128-bit shared Key algorithm** – Select 128-bit encryption, enter a 26 hex digit key in the boxes and click the OK button to enable 128-bit encryption. Use the Reset Keys button to clear any entered keys. The 128-key encryption provides greater security over the 40-key encryption.

Mobile Companion
Mode Encryption IP Config Power
Encryption Algorithm:
128-bit Shared Key
© 1 O 2 O 3 O 4
Adapter will use this key 🔽
XXXXX
XXXXX XXXXX XXXXX
<u>R</u> eset Keys Passkey
Ok Cancel

Figure 4-104 Symbol Profile – 128 bit Encryption

Up to four keys may be specified for each type of encryption. Selecting the "Adapter will use this key" checkbox for one key deselects all other keys.

The Reset Keys button resets the keys to factory default values.

Note: The hex digits are visible after the key is set. After the key values are set for the network, the digits are replaced with asterisks (*).

If the access point is using a passkey, then the active profile must use one too. The passkey is a plain text representation of the WEP keys, providing an easy way to enter WEP data without remembering the entire WEP key.

Diagnostics

The diagnostics can be accessed by either left clicking the Symbol icon in the Windows system tray or by right clicking and selecting Status from the menu.

Note: The menu also contains a Find WLAN option. This option displays available wireless LANs.

Signal Info IP Status Ping APs
- Signal Strongth
signal strength
EMSWLAN
100 Txmit Retries:
50 - ULUUUUUUUUUUU
o - Signal
Signal Quality: Good
Roaming Count: 0
Network status: In range
Transmit Rate: 11 Mbps
Close

Figure 4-105 Symbol Status – Signal

This screen displays the following information:

- A real time graph of the signal strength
- The missed beacons graph displays the amount of beacons broadcast by the access point missed by the receiver. Missed beacons are represented by a green indicator. If the indicator is red, the association with the access point could be jeopardized by the amount of missed beacons. It may be better to associate with a different access point.
- The transmit retries graph represents the number of data packets retransmitted by the radio. Fewer retries indicate a better signal and this condition is represented by a green indicator. If the indicator is red, associating with a different access point may reduce the number of retries and improve the signal.



Figure 4-106 Symbol Status – Information

This screen displays information about the adapter. The version information section displays the country and version numbers of the symbol hardware, software and firmware.

The current status section displays information about the profile currently being used.

Mobile Companior	n ?×
Signal Info I	P Status Ping APs
- IP Status	
IP Type:	DHCP Renew
IP Address:	100.100.100.100
Subnet Mask:	255.255.240.0
Gateway:	100.100.100.240
DNS:	100.100.100.255
WINS:	100.100.100.250
MAC Address:	00:A0:F8:00:00:00
Host Name:	Vx5
	Close

Figure 4-107 Symbol Status – IP Status

This screen displays the IP information for the radio.

Note: This screen is read only and cannot be changed by the user. To change IP settings, use the configuration screen covered earlier in this chapter.



Figure 4-108 Symbol Status – Ping Test

The ping test can be used to test the radio's ability to send and receive packets to another device, such as an access point. To start the test, enter the IP address of the desired network device (or select it from the pull down list) and select the packet size. Click the **Start Test** button. The statistics section displays the send and receive statistics. The lower part of the screen displays the signal level and the percentage of the data transmitted at the indicated rate (1, 2, 5.5 or 11Mb).

To stop the test, click the **Stop Test** button.

Mobile Companion	? ×
Signal Info IP Statu	s Ping APs
Known Access Points-	
AP MAC	Signal
🐣 00:02:2D:00:00:00	37%
Crumb 1	Defeat
Count. 1	nellesh
Close	•

Figure 4-109 Symbol Status – AP's

This screen displays all AP's known to the radio card and their signal strength.

Roaming can be controlled by right clicking on the icon to the left of the MAC address of the AP. After right clicking on the icon, select "Set Mandatory" to prohibit the radio from associating with a different access point. When this option is selected, an M appears above the icon.

Selecting "Set Roaming" allows the radio to associate with any access point with a better signal.

Note: These setting are temporary. They are not saved to the registry.

 Available WLAN Networks

 WLANA

 WLANB

 Refresh

The available WLAN networks can be displayed by right clicking on the Symbol icon in the Task Bar and selecting Available WLANs from the menu.

Figure 4-110 Symbol – Available WLANs

Close

►

The signal strength of the WLAN is indicated from one bar (weakest) to five bars (strongest). Encrypted networks are indicated with a "key" icon.

Updating Firmware

Symbol radio firmware is automatically updated when the radio driver is updated.

Certificates

Root CA Certificate

Please refer to the "LXE Security Primer" for more information on obtaining and installing certificates.

The easiest way to get the root CA certificate is to use a browser to navigate to the CA. To request the root CA certificate, open a browser to

http://<CA IP address>/certsrv.

Sign into the CA with any username and password.

Connect to 100.1	00.100.100	? ×
R		
Connecting to 100	.100.100.100	
User name:	2	▼ 200
Password:		
	Remember my pa	ssword
	ОК	Cancel

Figure 4-111 Logon to Certificate Authority

Click the link for **Download a CA certificate**.

Microsoft Certificate Services johndoe <u>H</u>	lome
Welcome	
Use this Web site to request a certificate for your Web browser, e-mail client, or other program. B using a certificate, you can verify your identity to people you communicate with over the Web, sign encrypt messages, and, depending upon the type of certificate you request, perform other security tasks.	∛y 1 and 9
You can also use this Web site to download a certificate authority (CA) certificate, certificate chair certificate revocation list (CRL), or to view the status of a pending request.	n, or
For more information about Certificate Services, see Certificate Services Documentation.	
Select a task: <u>Request a certificate</u> <u>View the status of a pending certificate request</u> <u>Download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL</u>	

Figure 4-112 Certificate Services Welcome Screen

To install directly click the install this CA certificate chain link.

To download the CA certificate click the Download CA certificate link.

Download a CA Certificate, Ce	ertificate Chain, or CRL	<u>Hom</u>
To trust certificates issued from t	this certification authority, install this CA certificate chain.	
To download a CA certificate, ce	ertificate chain, or CRL, select the certificate and encoding m	ethod.
CA Certificate:	_	
Current (johndoe)		
Encoding method:	-	
OBase 64		
Download CA certificate Download CA certificate chain Download latest base CRL Download latest delta CRL		





Figure 4-114 File Download Confirmation

Click the save button and save the certificate.

Make sure to keep track of the name and location of the certificate.

Copy the file to the computer to install the certificate and use the installer. Double clicking the certificate file installs the certificate. The figure below shows the Windows XP box when the certificate is double clicked. Click the **Install Certificate** button and follow the directions to install.

A message may appear when the certificate is about to install confirming that you want to install the certificate.

Certificate ? General Details Certification Path	×
Certificate Information	
This certificate is intended for the following purpose(s): • All issuance policies • All application policies	
Issued to: johndoe Issued by: johndoe	
Valid from 7/1/2004 to 7/1/2014	
Install Certificate	
OK	

Figure 4-115 Certificate Install

Once the certificate is installed, return to the proper authentication section, earlier in this chapter.

User Certificate

To authenticate using the EAP-TLS protocol you will need a user certificate with the private key. Once you have the user certificate, run the certificate installer from the control panel. The Microsoft supplicant is used. It does not matter if the Cisco supplicant is installed or not.

Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the VX5 computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication may fail.

If the VX5 was used to request the user certificate, it may have been installed by the CA. To check if a correct user certificate is installed:

- 1. Navigate to Start | Run and type mmc.
- 2. Select File | Add/Remove Snap-in.
- 3. Click the **Add** button.
- 4. Click Certificates, click the Add button and choose My User Account.
- 5. Click Finish | Close | OK.
- 6. Expand Certificates Current User and Personal
- 7. Click Certificates
- 8. The user certificate is shown in the right pane, if installed.

🚡 Certificates - [Console Root\Certificates - C	iurren	t User\Personal\Cert	ificates]	_ 🗆 ×
📸 Eile Action View Favorites Window <u>F</u>	<u>t</u> elp			_ & ×
Console Root		Issued To 🛛 🗠	Issued By	Expiration Date
🖻 🐻 Certificates - Current User		🔛 VX5User1	johndoe	2/2/2007
Personal				
Certificates				
Trusted Root Certification Authorities				
Enterprise Trust				
Intermediate Certification Authorities				
Active Directory User Object				
🕀 🖳 Untrusted Certificates				
Third-Party Root Certification Authorities				
📺 📺 Trusted People		L.	-	
😟 💼 Certificate Enrollment Requests	•	Ⅰ))
Personal store contains 1 certificate.				

Figure 4-116 Certificates

If there is no user certificate refer to "Installing a Root CA Certificate" earlier in this chapter.

Troubleshooting

When troubleshooting a radio problem, keep in mind that the problem may originate in one or more of the following areas:

- Microsoft Windows network configuration
- Hardware setup and configuration
- Software configuration
- WEP or WPA configuration.

Possible areas to check include:

- Review Microsoft Windows on-line help or commercially available reference guides for more information on Windows networking.
- Verify that radio settings match those of the desired Access Point (where appropriate).
- Review the settings in the radio software and use the diagnostics built into the radio software.

Unless otherwise directed, make sure Windows is NOT used to configure wireless network settings. Select the Network Connection icon in the Windows Control panel. Right click on the wireless network icon and select Properties.

	ork Connection	Properties		? X
General Wireles	s Networks Adv.	anced		
🗖 Use <u>W</u> indow	is to configure my	wireless networl	< settings	
Available <u>n</u> etw	orks:			
To connect to	an available netw	ork, click Config	jure.	1
WLANT			Lonfigure	
• ·· - ·· -			R <u>e</u> fresh	
below:				
			Move <u>up</u>	
			Move <u>up</u> Move <u>d</u> own	
<u>A</u> dd	<u>H</u> emove	Properties	Move <u>up</u> Move <u>d</u> own	
Add Learn about <u>se</u> configuration.	Bemove	Properties etwork	Move <u>up</u> Move <u>d</u> own	

Figure 4-117 Windows Wireless Network Properties

Make sure the "Use Windows to configure my wireless network setting" checkbox IS NOT checked when using WEP. If using WPA and the Microsoft supplicant, this box MUST be checked.

Chapter 5 Troubleshooting

Problem Determination Tips

Use the tips in this chapter as a guide. They include solutions to the simplest problems as well as things to observe when trying to diagnose more serious problems.

Consider the following:

- If a problem occurs while you're working, stop immediately. If you continue, you may lose data and destroy problem-related information.
- Observe what is happening. Write down what the computer and any optional devices are doing as well as what actions you took immediately before the problem occurred.
- Consider the simplest solution first. Ask yourself logical questions and consider alternatives.
- Is the computer plugged in? Are all the cables attached correctly?
- Which part of the system is operating erratically? Keyboard? Disk/Flash Drive? Barcode Scanner? Radio? Display? Each produces different symptoms.
- What program and/or optional devices are you using?
- What appears on the screen? Do you see any messages or random characters? Look up any messages in the documentation for your software, (e.g. Microsoft Windows, etc.)
- Are any LEDs illuminated? Which ones?
- Do you hear any beeps? How many? Are they long or short?
- Is the computer making any unusual noises?
- See if you can cause the problem to occur again. This may help you understand the source of the problem and will help you describe the problem if you must call for technical assistance.
- Make sure you are operating under the specified environmental conditions discussed in "Appendix C Technical Specifications"?

Use the troubleshooting procedures that follow these tips and, if necessary, perform any diagnostic procedures that may apply.

Based on the answers to the previous questions and suggestions, try to narrow the problem down to one of the following areas:

- Startup Problems
- Hardware Problems (i.e. power source, keyboard, display, hard drive, PCMCIA cards, optional devices, etc.)
- Radio Problems
- Software Related problems
- Memory

The following sections provide more detailed troubleshooting information about each of these areas.

Startup Problems

This section lists some of the configuration error messages that may appear at system startup and their possible solutions.

Note: If you press the power switch and the VX5 remains off, refer to the "Power Source" section of this chapter.

Problem	Solution
VX5 computer stops working and locks up each time you start it.	There may be a problem with a Microsoft Windows driver. To recover from this error, follow the steps in the "Bypassing Microsoft Windows Startup" section of this chapter.
The VX5 displays the "Non- System disk or disk error" message.	Make sure the VX5 is booting from the proper drive. To recover from this error, follow the steps in the "Verifying Boot Order" section of this chapter.
The VX5 displays either "CMOS time and date not set" or "Real time clock failure" messages.	There may be a problem with the CMOS battery. Follow the steps in the "Setting System Time and Date" section of this chapter.

Bypassing Microsoft Windows Startup

When using a Microsoft Windows operating system, you may want to bypass the configuration files or load Windows with a minimum number of drivers. The Windows Start Up Menu Allows several choices that aid in diagnosing a problem. To access the start-up menu:

- 1. Turn on the VX5.
- 2. Press and hold the <F5> key.
- 3. When the Windows Start Up Menu appears, select the desired choice:
 - 1. Normal
 - 2. Logged (\BOOTLOG.TXT)
 - 3. Safe mode
 - 4. Step-by-step confirmation
 - 5 Command prompt only
 - 6. Safe mode command prompt only

When you choose Safe Mode, you may notice differences in the way your system behaves. For instance, some device drivers are not loaded, the display resolution may be changed and system prompts and path have default values.

Step by step confirmation allows you to process or skip individual line items in your start up files.



Please refer to Microsoft Windows on line help or commercially available Windows guides for more information on operating Windows in safe mode and performing diagnostic and troubleshooting routines.

Verifying Boot Order

- 1. During bootup, the <F2> key may be pressed to enter BIOS Setup. Turn on the VX5. Press <F2> immediately.
- 2. The BIOS Setup Main Menu is displayed. Move the highlight to the Boot Menu.
- 3. Select "Boot Device Priority" by pressing the <Down Arrow> to highlight it.
- 4. Verify that the desired drive is listed first. In most cases this will be "Hard Drive".
- 5. If more than one drive is listed under "Hard Drive" verify the desired drive is listed first.
- 6. Any device listed with a "!" in front of the name will NOT be searched for a boot record.
- Use the <+> key to move an item up in the boot order and the <-> key to move an item down the list. Press <SHIFT> + <2nd> + <1> to enable or disable a device on the search list.

If the error continues you may need to reformat the C: drive and restore the system from backup.

Setting System Time and Date

- 1. If the VX5 is not already powered up, turn it on.
- 2. During bootup the <F2> key may be pressed to enter BIOS Setup. Press <F2> immediately.
- 3. At the BIOS Setup Main Menu, move the highlight to the Time parameter.
- 4. Type the desired entry and then press the <Tab> key to move from hours to minutes to seconds. The colons are automatically added by the system.
- 5. Press the <Down Arrow> to move to the Date parameter.
- 6. Type the desired entry and then press the <Tab> key to move from month to day to year. The backslashes are automatically added by the system.
- 7. Press <Esc> until you reach the Exit menu.
- 8. Select "Save and Exit" to save the changes. Press <Enter>.

If the VX5 does not automatically reboot, turn the VX5 off and then on again.

Hardware Problems

This section lists possible solutions to some common problems with hardware.

Power Source

The VX5 receives power from either an AC-DC adapter or a vehicle battery. Power source problems are usually interrelated. For example, a malfunctioning AC-DC adapter or vehicle battery will not power the computer.

ATTENTION

Using the wrong AC adapter or DC converter could damage the VX5. LXE assumes no liability for damage to the VX5 or adapter/converter caused by using the wrong adapter/converter.

The following table provides solutions to common power source problems:

Problem	Solution
The computer won't start.	Make sure you've attached the power cord properly and that you have the power switch in the On position.
	Make sure the wall outlet (for AC-DC adapter) is working or the vehicle battery is charged.
	Check fuse and replace if blown.
	Make sure the vehicle battery is connected properly to the VX5 power cable.

If you cannot find the source of the problem, consult LXE. Please refer to "Contacting LXE."

Keyboard

-

The following table provides solution to common keyboard problems:

Problem	Solution		
Get an unexpected character or function when pressing some keys.	Reboot the machine to return to its original setting. If the problem continues refer to the key map found in Appendix A "Key Maps" for correct key combinations.		
The <2 nd > key on the keyboard remains active and does not toggle on and off when another key is pressed	Press the \langle SP \rangle key or an arrow key to release the \langle 2 ^{nd\rangle} state. If the problem continues, contact LXE Customer Support department.		
prosted.	Note:	The 95-key keyboard does not have 2 nd key functionality.	
The keyboard locked and you cannot use <ctrl> + <alt> + to reboot.</alt></ctrl>	Flip the power switch off and then on to restart the computer.		

Display

Problem	Solutio	n		
The display is unreadable.	 Verify the Display setting in the Microsoft Windows Contropanel. The display settings should be set to High Color (16 bit) and 800 by 600 pixel resolution. Note: It may be necessary to reboot in Safe Mode to chan the display settings if the screen is unreadable. 			
		"Bypassing Microsoft Windows Startup" earlier in this chapter.		

Hard Disk Drive

If you have problems with the hard disk drive, run the Microsoft Windows scandisk utility. This utility analyzes the directories, files and File Allocation Tables (FAT).

Windows 2000/XP path: **My Computer | Local Disk | Properties | Tools | Error checking** then click the Check now button. If the scandisk utility does not report any errors and the hard disk still has problems, contact LXE Technical Support.



For information on running the scandisk utility, refer to the Windows help files.

PCMCIA Cards

Problem	Solution
You are having trouble accessing data on a PCMCIA card or some of the data appears to be missing.	Run the scandisk utility, which analyzes the directories, files and the File Allocation Table (FAT) on the card.
The scandisk utility reports no errors and you're still experiencing problems.	Can you access the PCMCIA card? Try to view the contents of the folders. If the folder doesn't display all the files stored in the folder, recovering data is unlikely.
Data files are damaged or corrupted.	Refer to your software documentation for file recovery procedures. Many software packages automatically create backup files or restore points.

Memory Conflicts

Microsoft Windows controls memory management. If you experience a problem with memory management, please refer to Windows help files or a commercially available Windows guide. If a particular program causes the memory error, refer to the documentation for that program.

IRQ Assignments

The VX5 has 16 IRQs, numbered 0 through 15, many of which are already assigned as follows:

IRQs	Device(s) Windows 2000	Device(s) Windows XP
IRQ0	Timer Output	Timer Output
IRQ1	Keyboard	Keyboard
IRQ2	Programmable Interrupt Controller	Programmable Interrupt Controller
IRQ3	Serial Port COM2 ²	Serial Port COM2 ²
IRQ4	Serial Port COM1	Serial Port COM1
IRQ5	Not Used	Not Used
IRQ6	Not Used	Not Used
IRQ7	Cisco Radio Card	Summit Radio Card Symbol Radio Card
IRQ8	Real Time Clock	Real Time Clock
IRQ9	PCI to USB Controller	PCI to USB Controller Cisco Radio Card
IRQ10	Reserved (default PC Card events)	Reserved (default PC Card events)
IRQ11	PCMCIA controller Symbol Radio Card	PCMCIA controller
IRQ12	Not Used	Not used
IRQ13	Numeric data processor	Numeric data processor
IRQ14	Primary IDE Controller	Primary IDE Controller
IRQ15	Not used	Secondary IDE Controller

Note: Please note that the IRQ assignments may change if additional hardware is added.

If additional hardware is added and no IRQs are available, it may be necessary to disable certain devices in the BIOS to free up IRQs for the new hardware.

IRQ usage Notes:

- Serial ports (COM1 or COM2) may be disabled in the BIOS or via Windows freeing up the specified IRQ for other uses.
- When the parallel port is disabled, IRQ7 is available for the radio. The parallel port is disabled by default. However, some radios may use IRQ9 instead of IRQ7.

² COM2 is labeled "COM2/3".

Optional Devices

This section provides information on solving problems related to optional devices.

Note: Make sure the VX5 is powered on before you turn on any powered optional devices.

To help determine which device is causing the problem:

- Check that all connecting cables are correctly and firmly attached. Loose cables can cause erroneous or intermittent signals. You may need to inspect connecting cables for loose wires, and check connectors for loose pins.
- Isolate the problem. Look in the Microsoft Windows Control panel System icon for devices displaying a "?" or an "!". Check the properties for these devices or delete these devices and reinstall them.
- Device Configuration. The smooth operation of the system depends on the interaction of all devices, programs and features. Is the device Plug and Play or is configuration necessary?
- Device driver. Make sure the correct driver is installed for the device, based on the version of Microsoft Windows operating system you are using. Check the documentation for the device or the device manufacturer's website for an updated driver.



For information adding or deleting devices or updating drivers, please refer to Windows Help screens or commercially available Windows guides.

The following table provides some solutions to common configuration problems:

Problem	Solution
You connected a device and the device isn't operating properly.	Verify Microsoft Windows recognizes the device by checking the System icon in the Control Panel. Check for a problem with the device driver or a hardware conflict.
You connected an external	Check all cables and connectors. Try a different cable.
device and the computer isn't operating properly.	If the VX5 was on when the device was attached, reboot the VX5.

Radio and Network Problems

2.4 GHz Wireless Network

Wireless radio and network problems may be divided into two general categories:

- Microsoft Windows networking problems
- Configuration of radio card/network

All VX5 radios include utilities to aid in diagnosing transmission problems. Please refer to Chapter 4, "Wireless Network Configuration" for details on using the diagnostic features. Chapter 4 also includes a "Troubleshooting" section. Please review the information there if experiencing troubles with the 2.4 GHz network.

If you are experiencing a Microsoft Windows networking problem, please refer to Windows online help or commercially available Windows networking guides for more information.

Ethernet Connection

Verify the network cable connections. If problems persist, please refer to Microsoft Windows on-line help or commercially available Windows networking guides for more information.

Note: Make sure Windows is NOT used to configure wireless network settings when using WEP. Instructions can be found in the "Troubleshooting" section of Chapter 4, "Wireless Network Configuration".

Software Related Problems

Consider the following:

- If an error message appears while you are using a software package, check the software documentation first. It usually includes a troubleshooting section or summary of error messages. If you cannot find the error message in the software documentation, look for the message in the Microsoft Windows Help.
- Some software may be incompatible with other software already installed. If the problem continues, contact the manufacturer of the software program.
- Make sure the software is compatible with the Microsoft Windows version you are using.
- Be sure you have enough memory and hard disk space to meet the software requirements.

Determining Software Revision

The Gnumber of the LXE loaded Windows image on the VX5 can be read in the system registry Use the Microsoft Registry Editor (REGEDIT.EXE) and browse to the following key:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\LXE\VX5

The value for VX5GNUM is the Gnumber of the LXE loaded Windows image.



Incorrectly editing the registry may severely damage your system. You should back up any valued data on the computer before making changes to the registry. LXE recommends only qualified personnel make registry changes.

System Testing

Power On Self Test (POST)

Each time the computer is turned on (or is rebooted using $\langle Ctrl \rangle + \langle Alt \rangle + \langle Del \rangle$), a series of comprehensive hardware tests are performed. These tests are called the Power On Self Test, or POST. The POST exercises the following hardware components:

- CPU flags and registers
- DRAM
- Cache RAM
- DMA
- Timers
- Interrupts
- Extended/expanded memory
- Video memory and controller
- Keyboard controller

POST Error Messages

The following table lists the POST error messages for the VX5. If problems persist, contact LXE's Customer Support.

0200 Failure Fixed Disk

Possible Cause

The fixed disk is not properly identified in BIOS.

Action

Run Setup. Choose "Auto" or enter the correct user parameters for the disk drive.

0210 Stuck Key

Possible Cause

A key is stuck on the keyboard.

Action

Turn the power off, and then back on again. If the problem persists, try a different keyboard or contact LXE's Customer Support.

0211 Keyboard Error

Possible Cause

Keyboard is not working.

Action

Check keyboard connection. Test with another keyboard. Keyboard or cable may be faulty.

0212 Keyboard Controller Failed

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

0213 Keyboard locked – Unlock key switch

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

0220 Monitor type does not match CMOS

Action

Run Setup and verify monitor settings.

0230 Shadow RAM Failed at offset: nnnn

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

0231 System RAM Failed at offset: nnnn

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

0250 System battery is dead - Replace and run Setup

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support for CMOS battery replacement.

0251 System CMOS checksum bad – Default Configuration Used

Action

CMOS has been corrupted. The VX5 is loading with default settings. Run Setup to modify values.

0260 System timer error

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

0270 Real time clock error

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

0280 Previous boot incomplete - Default configuration used

Action

The default BIOS values will be loaded. Run setup to change the values.

0281 Memory Size found by POST differed from CMOS

Action

Run BIOS Setup utility.

02B0/02B1 Diskette Drive A/B error

Possible Cause

Diskette drive is present but does not match BIOS setting.

Action

Check connections and run BIOS Setup.

02B2/02B3 Incorrect Drive A/B type - Run Setup

Action

Run the BIOS Setup utility.

02D0 System cache error - Cache disabled

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

02F0 CPU ID:

Possible Cause

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

02F4 EISA CMOS not writeable

Possible Cause

Cannot write BIOS to CMOS.

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

02F5 DMA Test Failed

Possible Cause

Cannot write to DMA (Direct Memory Access) registers..

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

02F6 Software NMI failed

Possible Cause

Cannot generate software NMI (Non-Maskable Interrupt).

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

02F7 Fail-Safe Timer NMI Failed

Possible Cause

Server BIOS2 test error: Fail-safe timer takes too long.

Action

Contact LXE's Customer Support.

POST Informational Messages

The following table lists the POST informational messages for the VX5.

Message	Meaning
nnn kB System RAM Passed	The amount of base memory that tested successfully.
nnn kB Extended RAM Passed	The amount of extended memory that tested successfully.
nnn kB Cache/Shadow RAM Passed	The amount of system cache or shadow RAM tested successfully.
UMB upper limit segment address: nnn	Displays the address of the limit of Upper Memory Blocks.
Video BIOS shadowed	The video BIOS has successfully been copied to shadow RAM.
System BIOS shadowed	The system BIOS has successfully been copied to shadow RAM.
Fixed Disk n	Fixed disk $n (0-3)$ identified.
Press the <f1> key to continue</f1>	This message indicates that an error was found during POST. Pressing the <f1> key allows the system to attempt to boot.</f1>
Press <f2> to enter Setup</f2>	Optional prompt displayed during POST. If the message is suppressed, pressing <f2> still enters Setup.</f2>
Entering SETUP	Starting the Setup program.

If You Need Further Assistance

If you have followed these recommendations and are still having problems, you may need additional technical assistance. This section contains the steps to take as you prepare to ask for help.

Before You Call

Since some problems you experience may be related to the operating system or software, it is important to investigate other sources of assistance first. Try the following before contacting LXE.

- Review the troubleshooting information in commercially available Microsoft Windows documentation.
- If the problem occurs while running software applications loaded after your purchase of the VX5, consult the software documentation for troubleshooting suggestions. Contact the software company's technical support department for assistance.

If you still need assistance refer to "Contacting LXE".

Appendix A Key Maps

95-key Keypad with Pointing Device



Figure A-1 95-Key VMT QWERTY Keyboard

The key map table that follows lists the commands used for the VX5. Note that since the VX5 uses a Microsoft Windows operating system, no DOS Terminal Emulation keypress sequences are provided.

Key Map 101-Key Equivalencies

There are ten hidden keys on the 95-key keyboard. Each of these hidden keys is accessed by pressing the $\langle Fn \rangle$ key plus another key.

To get this key	Press These Keys and Then
Insert	Fn + 0 on the number pad
Home	Fn + 7 on the number pad
Page Up	Fn + 9 on the number pad
Delete	Fn + . on the number pad
End	Fn + 1 on the number pad
Page Down	Fn + 3 on the number pad
Up Arrow	Fn + 8 on the number pad
Left Arrow	Fn + 4 on the number pad
Down Arrow	Fn + 2 on the number pad
Right Arrow	Fn + 6 on the number pad

Note: The 95-key keyboard does not have a 2^{nd} key function.

60-key Standard Keypad



Figure A-2 60-Key VMT QWERTY Keyboard

The key map table that follows lists the commands used when running LXE's VX5.

When running LXE's RFTerm program, please refer to the RFTerm Reference Guide for equivalent keys and keypress sequences:

Key Map 101-Key Equivalencies

When using a sequence of keys that includes the 2^{nd} key, press the 2^{nd} key first then the rest of the key sequence.

This keyboard does not have a NumLock indicator. NumLock is enabled by default in BIOS. NumLock may be toggled On or Off using the <2nd> <SHIFT> <F10> keypress sequence. To change NumLock status at boot, it is necessary to access the BIOS. Please refer to "BIOS Setup" in Chapter 3, "System Configuration". When NumLock is off, only the numeric 0 through 9 and DOT keys are affected. All other keymaps are unchanged.

When the computer boots with a VMT keyboard, the default condition of Caps (or CapsLock) is Off. The Caps (or CapsLock) condition can be set toggled with a <2nd>+<F1> key sequence. The CAPS LED on the VMT keyboard is illuminated when CapsLock is On.

To get this key		Press Th	Pross this koy			
To get this key	2 nd	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	CapsLock	Fress tills key
Increase Brightness ³	х					F4
Decrease Brightness ³	х					F5
Increase Contrast 4	х					F6
Decrease Contrast 4	х					F7
Increase Volume 5	х					F8
Decrease Volume ⁵	х					F9

³ The Brightness Adjustment keys have no function. Brightness is adjusted via the buttons on the VX5 control panel.

⁴ The Contrast Adjustment keys have no function because the VX5 is equipped with a TFT display that has no provision for these adjustments.

⁵ The Volume Control keys have no function as the volume control is adjusted via the Windows System Tray Volume icon.

To get this key Press These Keys and Then					Pross this kov	
io ger uns rey	2 nd	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	CapsLock	н геза ина кеу
Keyboard Backlight 6	x		х			F10
Suspend/Resume 7	х					F3
2 nd						2 nd
Shift			<u> </u>			Shift
Alt						Alt
Ctrl						Ctrl
Esc						Esc
Space						Sp
Enter			<u> </u>			Enter
Enter (numeric)	x					Enter
CapsLock (Toggle)	х					F1
Back Space						Ins/BkSp
Tab			<u> </u>			Tab
BackTab	x					Tab
Ctrl-Break ⁸	x		х			F2
Pause	x		İ			F2
Up Arrow						Up Arrow
Down Arrow						Down Arrow
Right Arrow						Right Arrow
Left Arrow						Left Arrow
Insert	х					Ins/BkSp
Delete (numeric)	x					DOT
Home	x					Left Arrow
End	х					Right Arrow
Page Up	x					Up Arrow
Page Down	х					Down Arrow
Right Shift	х	х				F7
Right Alt	х	x				F8
Right Ctrl	х	х				F9
ScrollLock	х	x				F4
NumLock	х	x				F10
F1						F1
F2						F2
F3						F3

6 The Keyboard Backlight key is used in $\langle 2^{nd} \rangle + \langle CTRL \rangle + \langle F10 \rangle$ key sequence. Refer to "VMT Keyboard Backlighting" in Chapter 4, "System Configuration".

7 The Suspend/Resume key has no function as Windows Power Management controls all power management modes on the VX5. Press <Ctrl> then <2nd> then <F2> to produce Ctrl-Break.

8

Press this key 2nd Shift Ctrl Alt CapsLock Press this key F4 F4 F5 F4 F5 F5 F6 F7 F8 F8 F9 F9 F10 x x F10 F11 x x x F12 x x a G G	Press These Keys and Then					Prose this koy																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
F4 F4 F5 F6 I I F5 F6 I I F7 F8 I I F8 F9 I I F9 F10 X X I F11 X X I F10 F11 X X I F12 a I I I B C I I I B c I I I B c I I I D d I I I I f I I I I i I I I I j I I I I j I I I I j I I I I j I I I I i I I I I i I <td< th=""><th></th><th>2nd</th><th>Shift</th><th>Ctrl</th><th>Alt</th><th>CapsLock</th><th>FIESS UIIS KEY</th></td<>		2 nd	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	CapsLock	FIESS UIIS KEY																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F5 F6 F6 F7 I I F6 F7 I I F7 F8 I I F8 F9 I I F9 F10 I F10 F11 X X I F12 X X I a I I B c I I B c I I B c I I B c I I D g I I I g I I I j I I I j I I I m I I I n I I I j I I I j I I I n I I I j I I I j I	F4						F4																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F6 F6 F7 I I F7 F8 I I F8 F9 I I F10 F11 X X I F10 F12 X X I F2 a I I B I A b I I I A b I I I A b I I I A b I I I I c I I I I g I I I I j I I I I j I I I I m I I I I m I I I I j I I I I g I I I I j I I I I q <td>F5</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>F5</td>	F5						F5																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F7 F7 F8 F8 F9 F8 F9 F9 F10 F1 F12 X F2 a F1 F12 X F1 F14 X F1 F12 X X F2 a F1 F2 a F1 F3 C F3 F4 G F4 F4 b F4 F4 b F5 F5 G F6 F5 g F7 F6 g F7 F7 g	F6						F6																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F8 F8 F9 I I F8 F10 I I F10 F11 X X I F11 F12 X X I F2 a I I A b I I B I A b I I D B I I c I I I D I I d I I I I I I g I I I I I I j I I I I I I j I I I I I I m I I I I I I I j I <tdi< td=""><td>F7</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>F7</td></tdi<>	F7						F7																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F9 F9 F10 X X F10 F11 X X F1 F12 X X F2 a A B c B c D B c C d D e C d D e E f F1 g D g F1 g H i I j I i I j M n I	F8						F8																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F10 F10 F11 x x F1 F12 x x F2 a A B c C C d C C d C C d C C d C C d C C d C C d C C d C C d C C d C C d C C f C C g C C h C C k C C n C C n C C n C C n C C n C C n C C n C C n C C n C	F9						F9																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F11 x x F1 F12 x x F2 a A B b B C d C C d C C d C C d C C g C C g C F g C F g C F g C F g C F g C F g C F g C F g C F g C F g C F g C C h C C m C C n C C n C C n C C n C C n C C n <t< td=""><td>F10</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>F10</td></t<>	F10						F10																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F12 x x F2 a A A b B B c C C d D D e C C g F F g G F g G H i I I j I J k I I m I I n I I n I I q I I n I I n I I q I I n I I n I I n I I n I I n I I n I I n I I n I I n I I n I I	F11	х	х				F1																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
a A b B c C d D e C F C g F <tr td=""> <td>F12</td><td>х</td><td>х</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>F2</td></tr> <tr><td>b B c C d D e E F C g F g F l F g F l F g F g F l F j F k F i F j F</td><td>а</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>A</td></tr> <tr><td>c C d D e D F G g G h H I J j J k J m K n K I J m K n N</td><td>b</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>В</td></tr> <tr><td>d D e I I E F I I F g I I G h I I I i I I I j I I J k I I I m I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I<td>C</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>С</td></td></tr> <tr><td>e E F G g G h H 1 H j J k K I K m K n K n M N</td><td>d</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>D</td></tr> <tr><td>F F g G h H i J j J k K I K K K K</td><td>е</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>E</td></tr> <tr><td>g G h H I J j J k K I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I</td><td>F</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>F</td></tr> <tr><td>h I I I I j I I J k I J K I I I I m I I I n I I I o I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I y I I I y I I I <</td><td>g</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>G</td></tr> <tr><td>I I I I j I J k I K I I L m I I n I M o I N o I O pp I P q I Q r I R ss I I u I U v I U v I V w I V x I V y I V x I V w I V x I V y I V X I X y I I A X X B I X C I X D X D</td><td>h</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Н</td></tr> <tr><td>j J k K I L m M n M o M o O p O q PP q R s S t V v V w V x V y V A X B X C X D X E X</td><td>I</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Ι</td></tr> <tr><td>k K K I I I L m M M n M N o O O p P O q P Q r R R s S S t I V w V U v V V x I X y I Y Z I X B X X D X D E X X</td><td>j</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>J</td></tr> <tr><td>I I I I I m I I M M n I I N O o I I I O p I I P O q I I Q Q r I I R R s I I I I I u I I I IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII</td><td>k</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>К</td></tr> <tr><td>m M n N o O p P q P q Q r R s S t T u U v U w U x X y Y Z X A X B X C X D X</td><td> </td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>L</td></tr> <tr><td>n N o O p P q Q r Q r R s S t S u U v U w U x V y V Z X A X B X C X D X E X</td><td>m</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>М</td></tr> <tr><td>o O O P I I P q I I Q r I I R s I I S t I I I R u I I I I I u I I I U U v I I I U U v I I V V V w I I I V V x I I V V V x I I I X X y I I X X X y I I X A X B I X I X A D I X D X E</td><td>n</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>N</td></tr> <tr><td>p P q Q r R s S t S u U v U w U x V y V A X B X C X D X E X</td><td>0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>q Q r A R s S S t A T u U U v U V w V W x X X y X Z A X A B X A C X C D X D E X E</td><td>р</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Р</td></tr> <tr><td>r R s S t T u U v U w V x V y V Z Z A X B X C X D X E X</td><td>q</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Q</td></tr> <tr><td>s S S t T u U v V w V x V y V Z Z A X B X C X D X E X</td><td>r</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>R</td></tr> <tr><td>t T u U U v U V w U V x U V y U V Z U V A X X B X X C X X D X X E X X</td><td>S</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>S</td></tr> <tr><td>u U U v V V w V W x V X y V Y z V Z A X X B X X C X C D X D E X E</td><td>t</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Т</td></tr> <tr><td>v V V w W W x X X y V Y z X Z A X X C X B C X C E X X</td><td>u</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>U</td></tr> <tr><td>w W x W y X z Y A X B X C X D X E X</td><td>V</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>V</td></tr> <tr><td>x X X y X Y z X Y A X Z A X A B X B C X C D X D E X E</td><td>W</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>W</td></tr> <tr><td>y Y Y z Z Z A X A B X B C X C D X D E X E</td><td>X</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>X</td></tr> <tr><td>z Z Z A X A B X B C X C D X C E X C</td><td>У</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>AxABxBCxCDxDExE</td><td>Z</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Z</td></tr> <tr><td>B x B C x C D x C E x C</td><td>A</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>x</td><td>А</td></tr> <tr><td>C x C D x D E x E</td><td>В</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>x</td><td>В</td></tr> <tr><td>D x D E x E</td><td>С</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>х</td><td>С</td></tr> <tr><td>E X E</td><td>D</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>х</td><td>D</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>E</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>x</td><td>E</td></tr>	F12	х	х				F2	b B c C d D e E F C g F g F l F g F l F g F g F l F j F k F i F j F	а						A	c C d D e D F G g G h H I J j J k J m K n K I J m K n N	b						В	d D e I I E F I I F g I I G h I I I i I I I j I I J k I I I m I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I <td>C</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>С</td>	C						С	e E F G g G h H 1 H j J k K I K m K n K n M N	d						D	F F g G h H i J j J k K I K K K K	е						E	g G h H I J j J k K I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	F						F	h I I I I j I I J k I J K I I I I m I I I n I I I o I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I y I I I y I I I <	g						G	I I I I j I J k I K I I L m I I n I M o I N o I O pp I P q I Q r I R ss I I u I U v I U v I V w I V x I V y I V x I V w I V x I V y I V X I X y I I A X X B I X C I X D X D	h						Н	j J k K I L m M n M o M o O p O q PP q R s S t V v V w V x V y V A X B X C X D X E X	I						Ι	k K K I I I L m M M n M N o O O p P O q P Q r R R s S S t I V w V U v V V x I X y I Y Z I X B X X D X D E X X	j						J	I I I I I m I I M M n I I N O o I I I O p I I P O q I I Q Q r I I R R s I I I I I u I I I IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	k						К	m M n N o O p P q P q Q r R s S t T u U v U w U x X y Y Z X A X B X C X D X							L	n N o O p P q Q r Q r R s S t S u U v U w U x V y V Z X A X B X C X D X E X	m						М	o O O P I I P q I I Q r I I R s I I S t I I I R u I I I I I u I I I U U v I I I U U v I I V V V w I I I V V x I I V V V x I I I X X y I I X X X y I I X A X B I X I X A D I X D X E	n						N	p P q Q r R s S t S u U v U w U x V y V A X B X C X D X E X	0						0	q Q r A R s S S t A T u U U v U V w V W x X X y X Z A X A B X A C X C D X D E X E	р						Р	r R s S t T u U v U w V x V y V Z Z A X B X C X D X E X	q						Q	s S S t T u U v V w V x V y V Z Z A X B X C X D X E X	r						R	t T u U U v U V w U V x U V y U V Z U V A X X B X X C X X D X X E X X	S						S	u U U v V V w V W x V X y V Y z V Z A X X B X X C X C D X D E X E	t						Т	v V V w W W x X X y V Y z X Z A X X C X B C X C E X X	u						U	w W x W y X z Y A X B X C X D X E X	V						V	x X X y X Y z X Y A X Z A X A B X B C X C D X D E X E	W						W	y Y Y z Z Z A X A B X B C X C D X D E X E	X						X	z Z Z A X A B X B C X C D X C E X C	У						Y	AxABxBCxCDxDExE	Z						Z	B x B C x C D x C E x C	A					x	А	C x C D x D E x E	В					x	В	D x D E x E	С					х	С	E X E	D					х	D		E					x	E
F12	х	х				F2																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
b B c C d D e E F C g F g F l F g F l F g F g F l F j F k F i F j F	а						A																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
c C d D e D F G g G h H I J j J k J m K n K I J m K n N	b						В																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
d D e I I E F I I F g I I G h I I I i I I I j I I J k I I I m I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I I n I I <td>C</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>С</td>	C						С																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
e E F G g G h H 1 H j J k K I K m K n K n M N	d						D																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
F F g G h H i J j J k K I K K K K	е						E																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
g G h H I J j J k K I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	F						F																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
h I I I I j I I J k I J K I I I I m I I I n I I I o I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I q I I I y I I I y I I I <	g						G																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
I I I I j I J k I K I I L m I I n I M o I N o I O pp I P q I Q r I R ss I I u I U v I U v I V w I V x I V y I V x I V w I V x I V y I V X I X y I I A X X B I X C I X D X D	h						Н																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
j J k K I L m M n M o M o O p O q PP q R s S t V v V w V x V y V A X B X C X D X E X	I						Ι																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
k K K I I I L m M M n M N o O O p P O q P Q r R R s S S t I V w V U v V V x I X y I Y Z I X B X X D X D E X X	j						J																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
I I I I I m I I M M n I I N O o I I I O p I I P O q I I Q Q r I I R R s I I I I I u I I I IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	k						К																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
m M n N o O p P q P q Q r R s S t T u U v U w U x X y Y Z X A X B X C X D X							L																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
n N o O p P q Q r Q r R s S t S u U v U w U x V y V Z X A X B X C X D X E X	m						М																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
o O O P I I P q I I Q r I I R s I I S t I I I R u I I I I I u I I I U U v I I I U U v I I V V V w I I I V V x I I V V V x I I I X X y I I X X X y I I X A X B I X I X A D I X D X E	n						N																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
p P q Q r R s S t S u U v U w U x V y V A X B X C X D X E X	0						0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
q Q r A R s S S t A T u U U v U V w V W x X X y X Z A X A B X A C X C D X D E X E	р						Р																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
r R s S t T u U v U w V x V y V Z Z A X B X C X D X E X	q						Q																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
s S S t T u U v V w V x V y V Z Z A X B X C X D X E X	r						R																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
t T u U U v U V w U V x U V y U V Z U V A X X B X X C X X D X X E X X	S						S																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
u U U v V V w V W x V X y V Y z V Z A X X B X X C X C D X D E X E	t						Т																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
v V V w W W x X X y V Y z X Z A X X C X B C X C E X X	u						U																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
w W x W y X z Y A X B X C X D X E X	V						V																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
x X X y X Y z X Y A X Z A X A B X B C X C D X D E X E	W						W																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
y Y Y z Z Z A X A B X B C X C D X D E X E	X						X																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
z Z Z A X A B X B C X C D X C E X C	У						Y																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
AxABxBCxCDxDExE	Z						Z																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
B x B C x C D x C E x C	A					x	А																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
C x C D x D E x E	В					x	В																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
D x D E x E	С					х	С																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
E X E	D					х	D																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
	E					x	E																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								

To get this key		Press Th	Prose this key			
	2 nd	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	CapsLock	Press this key
F					x	F
G					x	G
Н					x	Н
				\square	x	1
J				\square	x	J
K					x	K
L					x	L
Μ					x	М
N					X	N
0					Х	0
P				L	Х	Р
Q					х	Q
R					х	R
S					х	S
T					х	Т
U			[i		x	U
V					x	V
W					x	W
X			[i		x	Х
Y					x	Y
Z					x	Z
1 (alpha)	х	x				1
2 (alpha)	x	x				2
3 (alpha)	х	x				3
4 (alpha)	x	x	[i			4
5 (alpha)	x	x				5
6 (alpha)	х	x				6
7 (alpha)	х	x				7
8 (alpha)	x	x				8
9 (alpha)	x	x				9
0 (alpha)	x	x				0
DOT (alpha)	x		ļ			к
1 (numeric)			İi	<u> </u>	i	1
2 (numeric)			İ	<u> </u>		2
3 (numeric)	i		İi	1		3
4 (numeric)	1		i	1		4
5 (numeric)		†	i	<u> </u>	i	5
6 (numeric)		†	i	<u> </u>	i	6
7 (numeric)		1	ļi		i	7
8 (numeric)		†	i	<u> </u>	i	8
- (L	J	L	L	، ا	. ~

To get this key		Press Th	Dress this key			
	2 nd	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	CapsLock	Press this key
9 (numeric)						9
0 (numeric)						0
DOT (numeric)						DOT
<	х					0
]	х					1
]	х					2
>	х					3
=	х					4
{	х					5
}	х					6
/ (numeric)	х		х			7
/ (alpha)	х					7
- (numeric)	х		х			8
- (alpha)	х					8
+ (numeric)	х		х			9
+ (alpha)	х					9
* (numeric)	х					I
* (alpha)	х		х			I
: (colon)	x					D
; (semicolon)	х					F
?	х					L
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	х					Ν
_ (underscore)	х					М
, (comma)	х					J
(apostrophe)	х					Н
~ (tilde)	х					В
/	х					S
	х					А
"	х					G
!	х					Q
@	х					W
#	x					E
\$	x					R
%	х					Т
٨	х					Y
&	x					U
(x					0
)	х					Р

IBM 3270 Keypad Ovelay



Figure A-3 IBM 3270 Specific Keypad

The 60-key keypad is available with an IBM 3270 overlay designed to allow the user to enter terminal emulator commands when running LXE's RFTerm program. When running this program please refer to the following reference guide for equivalent keys and keypress sequences:

• RFTerm Reference Guide

IBM 5250 Keypad Overlay



Figure A-4 IBM 5250 Specific Keypad

The 60-key keypad is available with an IBM 5250 overlay designed to allow the user to enter terminal emulator commands when running LXE's RFTerm program. When running this program please refer to the following reference guide for equivalent keys and keypress sequences:

• RFTerm Reference Guide
Appendix B Technical Specifications

Physical Specifications

Features		Specification	Comments
СРИ		933MHz PIII	
Memory	BIOS Flash	1 MB BIOS Flash	
	RAM	256 or 512MB SDRAM	
Display	Controller	SVGA compatible controller	
	Туре	TFT	
Mass	Rotating	40 or 80 GB	
Storage	Compact	2 or 4 GB (LT)	Available storage options may vary based on date of
	Flash		options.
	PCMCIA	2 or 4 GB (LT)	
PCMCIA/CardBus Interface		Two (2) CardBus Slots: Accepts Type I, II and III PCMCIA cards.	Compatible with the PCMCIA version 2.1 standard.
External Connectors/		Two (2) external RS-232C serial ports: COM1 and COM2	9-pin "D" (male) connectors
Interfaces		Two (1) Type A USB Port	Internal and via adapter cable
		One (1) Ethernet Port	RJ-45 via adapter cable
Power Connector		12-80V DC input power	5-pin connector
Power Switch		Sealed power switch	
Beeper		Minimum loudness greater than 95dBm at 10 cm in front of unit	
Dimensions		Length: 12.2 in (30.98 cm)	
		Width: 9.5 in (24.13 cm)	
		Depth: 4.3 in (10.92 cm)	

⁹ Available storage options may vary based on date of manufacture and other VX5 options.

Features		Specification	Comments
Battery for CMOS		Internal lithium Battery	
External Power Supply	AC Adapter	120-240VAC to 12VDC	

Environmental Specifications

The VX5 will withstand the following environmental characteristics and has been tested in accordance with applicable sections of MIL-STD-810E.

Feature	Specification
Altitude	Operational to 10,000 ft. (3048 meters)
Operating Temperature	Standard temperature version: 0 °C to +50 °C (+32 °F to +122 °F) Extended temperature option: Startup: -20 °C to +50 °C (-4 °F to +122 °F) Operating: -30 °C to +50 °C (-22 °F to +122 °F)
Storage Temperature	Standard temperature version: -30°C to +60 °C (-22 °F to +140 °F) Extended temperature version: -40 °C to +60 °C (-40 °F to +140 °F)
Water, Sand and Dust	IP66 per IEC60529
Humidity	10-90% Non-condensing at 40°C (104°F)
Vibration	Bounce loose cargo for 0.5 hour duration. Common carrier transportation, transit face.
ESD	15 kV
Shock	75G, 5msec duration, 100 shock impacts

Display Specifications

Characteristic		Specification
Туре	TFT	SVGA
Resolution		800 X 600 pixels (25 lines x 80 characters)
Cell Size		8 x 16 pixels (8 x 8 also supported – 25 lines x 80 chars)
Dot Dimensions		.30mm x .30mm
Display Dimensions		280mm x 218mm x 11mm (11.0" x 8.6" x 0.4")
Viewing Area		249mm x 187.5mm (9.8" x 7.38")
Active Display Area		246mm x 184.5mm (9.7" x 7.26")

UPS Battery Pack Specifications

Feature	Specification
Altitude	Operational to 10,000 ft. (3048 meters)
Operating Temperature	-30 °C to +50 °C (-22 °F to +122 °F)
Storage Temperature	-40 °C to +70 °C (-40 °F to +158 °F)
Water, Sand and Dust	IP66 per IEC60529
Humidity	10-90% Non-condensing at 40°C (104°F)
Vibration	Bounce loose cargo for 0.5 hour duration. Common carrier transportation, transit face.
ESD	15 kV

Radio Specifications

Summit CF 2.4GHz

Bus Interface:	Compact Flash via a PCMCIA adapter
Radio Frequencies:	2.4 - 2.4897 GHz IEEE 802.11b 802.11g DSSS OFDM
RF Data Rates:	1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps
RF Power Level:	64 mW (18 dBm)
Channels	11 US, 13 Europe, 13 Japan
Operating Temperature	see VX7 Environmental Specifications
Storage Temperature	see VX7 Environmental Specifications
Connectivity:	Novell, TCP/IP, Ethernet, ODI

PCMCIA Cisco 2.4GHz Type II

Bus Interface:	PCMCIA 2.0, Type II slot
Radio Frequencies:	2.4 - 2.4835 GHz IEEE 802.11b DS SS
RF Data Rates:	11 Mbps
RF Power Level:	100 mW
Channels	11 US, 13 Europe, 4 France, 1 Japan
Operating Temperature	see VX5 Environmental Specs
Storage Temperature	see VX5 Environmental Specs
Connectivity:	Novell, TCP/IP, Ethernet, ODI

PCMCIA Symbol 11Mb 2.4GHz Type II

Bus Interface:	PCMCIA 2.0, Type II slot
Radio Frequencies:	2.4 - 2.5 GHz IEEE 802.11b DS SS
RF Data Rates:	11 Mbps maximum
RF Power Level:	100 mW
Channels	11 US, 13 Europe, 4 France, 1 Japan
Operating Temperature	see VX5 Environmental Specs
Storage Temperature	see VX5 Environmental Specs
Connectivity:	Novell, TCP/IP, Ethernet, ODI

Revision History

Revision A: Initial Release, March 2004

Revision B: September 2004

Section	Explanation
Chapter 1 – Introduction	Added 8500 Series Tethered Scanners to Accessories. Updated Accessories listing effective July 2004.
	Revised "Components" section due to new COM2 labeling.
Chapter 2 – Physical Description and Layout	Revised "AT Compatible Core Logic", "General Windows Keyboard Shortcuts", "The On/Off Switch", "The 95-key QWERTY Keyboard with Pointing Device", "Printer/PC Serial Connector (COM2)" and "Install the 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA Card".
	Added "Install/Remove Touchscreen Protective Film" section.
	Added IBM 3270 and IBM 5250 overlay information to "The 60-key QWERTY Keyboard" section.
Chapter 4 – System Configuration	Revised "The VX5 Drivers CD-ROM" and "Serial Port Pin 9".
Chapter 5 – RF Network	Revised Figure 4-6, Cisco Properties - RF Network.
Configuration	Revised Symbol Radio "Configuration" section.
Chapter 6 – Troubleshooting	Added footnotes on COM2 labeling to "IRQ Assignments".
Appendix A – Key Maps	Added IBM 3270 and IBM 5250 overlay information to "The 60-key QWERTY Keyboard" section.
Appendix B – Technical Specifications	Revised "Display Specifications".

Revision C: February 2005

Section	Explanation
Front Page	Updated LXE logo and date.
Chapter 1 – Introduction	Added VX1/2/4 Power Adapter Cable to VX5/6/7 Series to Accessories list.
Chapter 3 – Power Supply	Added section for VX1/2/4 Power Adapter Cable.
Chapter 5 – RF Network Configuration	Revised "Troublehooting" section. Revised "LEAP" section. Information on LEAP is now included in the "WPA for VX5" section. Added "WPA for the VX5".
Chapter 6 – Troubleshooting	Revised "2.4 GHz Wireless Network" section.
Appendix B – Technical Specifications	Revised "Physical Specifications".

Revision D: March 2006

Section	Explanation
Notices	Updated copyrights and trademarks.
Entire Manual	Updated illustrations as necessary to reflect 2005 LXE logo.
Chapter 1 – Introduction	Revised "Overview" section.
Chapter 2 – Physical Description and Layout	Revised "Install the 2.4GHz Type II PCMCIA Radio".
Chapter 3 – Power Supply	Revised "VX5 Input Power Specifications".
Appendix B – Technical Specifications	Added "Revision History" to appendix.

Revision E: November 2006

Section	Explanation
Notices	Updated copyrights and trademarks.
Chapter 2 – Physical Description and Layout	Revised the following sections: "Video Subsystem", "Serial Scanner Connection (COM1)" and "Printer/PC Serial Connection (COM2)". Added information that was previously included in Chapter 3, "Power Supply".
Chapter 3 – Power Supply	Deleted chapter. This information is now included in Chapter 2, "Physical Description and Layout".
Chapter 4 – System Configuration	Renamed to Chapter 3, "System Configuration". Added new sections: "Screen Blanking Service", "Identifying BIOS Revision" and "Wavelink Avalanche Enabler (Optional)". Revised "BIOS Setup" section.
Chapter 5 – RF Network Configuration	Renamed to Chapter 4, "Wireless Network Configuration". Updated "Encryption" section for Cisco radio. Divided chapter into sections by radio type, Cisco and Symbol, plus a separate section for certificates.
Chapter 6 – Troubleshooting	Renamed to Chapter 5, "Troubleshooting".

Revision F: October 2007

Section	Explanation
Notices	Updated copyrights and trademarks.
Chapter 2 – Physical Description and Layout	Revised "Vehicle 12-80VDC Power Connection" with updated graphic. Revised "Install the 2.4GHz PCMCIA radio" for Summit.
Chapter 3 – System Configuration	Renamed and revised section "Screen Blanking Service" to "Screen Blanking Utility". Revised "Microsoft Windows License Agreement (First Boot)" and "The VX5 Drivers CD-ROM" for Summit.
Chapter 4 – RF Network Configuration	Added section for Summit radio.

Revision G: December 2007

Section	Explanation
Chapter 1 – Introduction	Added footnote to "Overview" section.
Chapter 3 – System Configuration	Revised "Drive C Directory Structure". Revised "Wavelink Avalanche Enabler Configuration" for Avalanche Mobility Center.
Appendix B – Technical Specifications	Revised "Physical Specifications".

Index

A

AC Adapter, Specs	
AC to DC Power Supply	54
Access BIOS Setup	61
Adapter Cable, VX1/2/4 Power Supply	57
Antenna	
Connector, Location	4
Diversity	
Receive	127
Transmit	127
AT Compatible Core Logic	16
Audio	
Connector	30
Avalanche Enabler installation	97
Avalanche Enabler update	
1	

B

Backlight Control, Keyboard	74
Barcode	
Data Entry	7
Barcode scanner data entry	7
Battery	
CMOS, Specs	
Beeper, Specs	
BIOS	
Enabling Parallel Port	67
Enabling Serial Port	67
Enabling USB Port	68
Exit	
w/o Save	72
Exit Menu	72
Floppy Drive	63
Hard drives	64
Load	
Defaults	72
Previous	72
NumLock	66
Power Management	69
Save and Exit	72
Save Changes	72
BIOS Setup	59
Advanced Menu	65
Main Menu	63
Boot Order	
Verifying	

Bypass Configuration	Files	2	1:	5
-----------------------------	-------	---	----	---

C

CAPS LOCK Mode LED Indicator	41
Caps-Lock Mode	41
Central Processing Unit	16
CHKDSK	218
Cisco	
Aironet 350 Series Radio	157
Antenna Mode	162
Authentication Type	161
Beacon Period	163
Channel	161
Client Name	160
Data Rate	161
Data Retries	161
Fragment Threshold	162
LEAP	166
Link Status Meter	168
Network Security Type	
Network Type	
Power Save Mode	
RTS Retries	
RTS Threshold	162
Short Radio Headers	161
Specified Access Point	
SSID	
Static WEP	
Transmit Power	161
Wake Duration	163
World Mode	161
Cisco LEAP	187
Cleaning	
Display	46
CMOS Battery	17
CMOS NiCd Battery	
CMOS time and date not set	
Color	
Cable Wiring	
COM ports	
Setup	67
COM1/Scanner Connection. Location	
COM2 Connector Location	6
Comm Ports	
COM 1	.19.20
COM 1 - 03F8h	
COM 2	.19.21
	,=-

Keyboard	23
USB	
Connectors	19
Connectors, Specs	
Contrast Up and Down	
Not applicable	
Control Keys, location	
Controller (Video), Specs	
CPU	1. 16
Data entry	7
D	
Data entry	7
Default	
BIOS parameters	62
Default Values, Load	72
Defaults	
Caps Lock	41
Device driver	
Touch screen	96
Devices, Optional	
Troubleshooting	
Dimensions, Specs	
Discard BIOS Parameter Changes	

E

Diversity

Pixels46Power Management17Display Brightness Control Keys43Display Contrast Control Keys43Display Specification239Display, Specs237, 239

A denter entions	
Auapter options	109
communication	100
Configuration	100
Connection	103
Execution	104
File Menu	101
Global options	111
Passwords	101
Server Contact	105
Settings Menu	102
Startup and shutdown options	106
Window options	107
Enabler installation	97
Enabler Uninstall Process	97
Enter Data	7
Environmental Specification	238
Error Messages	214
Ethernet	
Configuration	80
Exit	
w/o Save	72
with Save	72
Exit and Save	72
Exit Menu	
Exit w/o Save	72
Load Defaults	72
Load Previous	72
Save and Exit	72
Save Changes	72
External Connectors	19
Audio	30
Keyboard	23
Power	31
Serial	20, 21
USB	26
External Connectors, Specs	237

F

Features	1
Flash Drive	
Flash Memory	1
Floppy Disk	
Fuse	
Replacement	

G

Getting Started4

H

Hampshire Touchscreen Calibration software......79

Configuration

Connector

Configuration Files

Hard Disk	
Power Management	17
Troubleshooting	
Hard Drives	
Setup	64
Hardware	
Configuration	15
Testing	
Troubleshooting	
Help	
Hidden Kevs	
How To	·····, ·
Configure Hard drives	64
Enable Floppy Drive	63
Get Help	
Initiate Page Up command	
Install Radio Card	
Keyboard data entry	7
Set System Time and Date	
Toggle 2nd key on and off	
Toggle Caps-Lock on and off	
Type	
JF	

Ι

Install

Equipment Needed	50
Fuse	58
Type II 2.4GHz Radio Card	50, 53
Installation	
Device drivers	95
Internal Flash Array (IFA) and Bootup	61
IRQ3 (PRINTER/PC port)	16
IRQ4 (SCANNER port)	16
/	

K

Key functions	
Unused	40
Key Map	
101-Key Chart	
TN3270 keypads	
Key Maps	
Hidden Keys	
Keyboard	
Backlight Control	74
Connector	
Control Keys	
Data entry	7
Hidden Key Functions	
LED Indicators	41
NumLock	
Troubleshooting	
Keyboard Backlight	

Keyboard Connector, Location	6
keyboard shortcuts	44
Keypresses	
BIOS	61

L

LEAP	
Summit Radio	136
LED indicators	41
LEDs	
2nd	
Caps-Lock, CAPS	41
Secondary Keys	42
Load	
Defaults	72
Previous	72
Location	
Antenna Connector	19
COM 1 and COM 2	19
Fuse	19
Power DC Connector	19
Power Switch	19
Printer Port	19
RS232 ports	19
Scanner Port	19
Serial Ports	19
USB Connector	19
LPT ports	
setup	67
LXE Customer Support	

M

Manuals	10
Mass Storage, Specs	
Memory	

N

Network Troubleshooting	
2.4GHz Wireless	222
Ethernet	222
Non-System disk or disk error	214
Normal Operating Mode	17
Norton Ghost	
Installing Windows 2000	
Installing Windows 98	
Installing Windows XP	
NUM LOCK	
and 2 nd Functions	40
Disabled	40
NumLock	
NumLock, BIOS Setting	66

0

On/Off	
condition of CapsLock	
condition of NumLock	
On/Off Switch	
Operating Temperature, Specs	
Optional Power Supply	54
1 11 5	

P

Parallel Port	
Enabling in BIOS	67
Parameter Changes	
BIOS	63
PC Card Slots, Location	4
PC Cards	
Plug and Play	17
PCMCIA Cards	
Plug and Play	17
Troubleshooting	
Types, Specs	
PCMCIA Slots	
PEAP/GTC	
Summit Radio	140
PEAP/MSCHAP	177
PEAP/MSCHAP	
Summit Radio	138
Pen Stylus	8, 46
Phillips No. 1 Screwdriver	50
Physical Controls	18
Physical Specification	237
Pin 9 on COM 1	
and Scanner	20
Pin 9, Serial Port	
+5V	73
RI	73
Pin 9, Serial Port Configuration	73
Pinout	
COM 1	20
COM 2	
POST	
Power Cable	
Adapting VX1/2/4 Power Supply	57
Power Connector	
Power Connector, Location	6
Power Connector, Specs	
Power Management	17
BIOS	69
Power On Self Test (POST)	
POST Messages	
Error Messages	
Informational Messages	
Power Source	

Troubleshooting	217
Power Status LED	18
Power Supply	
CMOS Battery	17
CMOS NiCd Battery	58
Power Supply, Specs	238
Power Switch	18
Power Switch, Location	6
Power Switch, Specs	237
Printer Serial Port	21
Problem Solving	213
PSK	198
PXE Boot	93

Q

R

Radio Specifications	
2.4 GHz	
RAM	
Real time clock failure	
Remote Installation Services	See RIS
Resolution	17
Resolution, Specs	
Restore	72
Restore BIOS from Flash	72
Reverse Polarity	56
Revision History	
RIS	93
RS-232	
Data Entry	7

S

Save and Exit	72
Save BIOS Parameter Changes	72
Save Changes	72
Scanner	
and Pin 9 on COM 1	20
Data entry	7
Screen blanking	
Adminstrator privileges	83
Cable	22
Error log	
Install service	
Requirements	81
Secondary Mode LED Indicator	41
Security Options, Wirerless	113
Serial Connector	
Serial Port	·······
Enabling in BIOS	67
2	

Pin 9 Configuration	73
Settings Menu	
Adapters tab	
Connection tab	
Display tab	
Execution tab	
Server Contact tab	105
Startup Shutdown tab	106
Setup	
BIOS vs. Windows	59
Parallel Port	67
Serial Port	67
USB Port	68
Slot 0 (Left)	48
Slot 1 (Right)	48
Software	
Troubleshooting	223
Software Loaded by LXE	223 76
Speaker Jack Location	4 6
Speaker Volume Control Keys	
Speaker/Beeper Location	
Specification	············
Input Power	57
Specifications	
Audio Connector	30
Display	230
Environmental	237 238
Keyboard Connector	230
Physical	23
Power Connector	31
USB Connector	
Standby Operating Mode	20
Standoy Operating Wode	1/
Troubleshooting	214
Status I ED Indicator	217 41
Status LLD Indicator	
Storage Temperature Spece	
Storage Temperature, Spees	230 8 /6
Stylus Data Entry	0, +0 Q
Stylus Data Entry	c
Hardware Configuration	15
Testing	13 201
System Configuration	224 50
System Memory	
System Memory Sneeg	ווו0 רבר
System Dequirements WDA	/ 23 170
System Requirements, WPA	1/0

T

1
42
50
96
8, 46

Touchscreen
Calibration78
Data Entry8
Finger or Stylus8
Troubleshooting
TSHARC
Hampshire Touchscreen Calibration software79
Type II 2.4GHz Radio Card50, 53

U

UMB (Upper Memory Block)	16
Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)	17
Unused key functions	40
UPS	17
Operating Temperature, Specs	239
Storage Temperature, Specs	239
USB	
Connector	26
USB Connector, Location	6
USB Port	
Enabling in BIOS	68
Using the Keypad	
BIOS	61

V

Vehicle Chassis Ground	
Vehicle Power	
Adapting VX1/2/4 Power Supply	
Verify Boot Order	
Video Subsystem	17
View	
Display	46
Viewing Area, Specs	239
VMT keyboard	
VX5	
Windows device drivers	95

W

Wavelink Avalanche Enabler installation	97
WEP	
Summit Radio	134
When to use this guide	2
Windows	
Device drivers	95
Installation	
Using Ethernet Port	93
Using Norton Ghost	86
Using PCMCIA Network Card	90, 94
Using PXE Boot and RIS	
License Agreement	1, 75
Network Configuration	80
-	

249

Power Management17
Product Key1, 75
Software Key1, 75
Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)60
Wire Color
Cable Wiring
WMI Support60
WPA
EAP-TLS151, 192, 211
LEAP

PEAP/GTC	
PEAP/MSCHAP	
PSK	
Supported Authentications	
Summit Radio	
System Requirements	170
WPA/LEAP	
Summit Radio	142, 144
WPA-PSK	ŕ
Summit Radio	146